AL-BAHER



CONNECT PLUS

الصف الرابع الابتدائي الفصل الدراسي الأول

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

4th Primary 2024

First Term
Parents' Guide

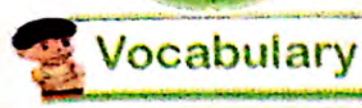
Scope and sequence

Theme (1) I discover myself

	Unit 1 What can I do?	Unit 2 Plants and animals	Unit 3 My world
Vocabulary	body systems: bone, blood, heart, lungs, muscles, skeleton, stomach, swallow	animals: amphibian, arachnid, bat, bird, fish, invertebrate, mammal, reptile, species, vertebrate; beak, fin, fur, gill, scales; crab, dragonfly, grasshopper, jellyfish, octopus, snail, squid Comparative and superlative adjectives; adverbs	my local area: community, neighborhood, citizenship history: dynasty, hieroglyphs, pharaoh, scribe governorates of Egypt, capital city music: clapping, ney, oboe, oud, qanun, rebaba, shabbaba; simsimeya, string instrument, wind instrument
Language	Mom wants to tidy the lounge. Capital letters: English, Egypt, Braille	An Asian elephant is smaller than an African elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. Some invertebrates can swim very well.	This is my neighborhood. It's mine. That's your bike. It's yours. Important dynasties ruled Egypt for many years.
Reading	A text about senses	Texts about animal classification; a text about animal sizes	A text about the history of ancient Egypt; texts about folk music and folk dancing
Writing	Choosing a suitable title for a text; a paragraph about a healthy lifestyle; notes to plan activities	Practicing dictionary skills; writing about advantages and disadvantages; a habitat report	Describing your community; a paragraph describing folk music or dance
Speaking	A dialog about physical and creative activities	A True or False game; discussion about colors; description of a picture	Talking about where you live; group work to make a tourist information guide
Listening	Interviews with children talking about senses; information about Paralympic athletes	Facts about animals; facts about under the sea world	Children describing their communities; information about governorates; musical instruments
Life skills	**Self-management**: eating healthily, living a healthy life **Respect of diversity:** differently-abled people	**Critical thinking:** considering advantages and disadvantages **Collaboration:** pair work about a micro-habitat	**Respect for diversity:** the different governorates of Egypt **Communication:** a tourist information guide
Values	**Appreciation of science** **Tolerance**	**Appreciation of science**	**Curiosity** **Participation**
Issues and challenges	**Preventative and therapeutic health** **Non-discrimination issues**	**Environmental responsibility**	**Loyalty and belonging** **National unity** **Awareness of duties and rights**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Social studies:** a healthy lifestyle **Science:** body systems; senses	**Science:** classification of animals Art: primary and secondary colors	**Social studies:** ancient Egyptian history; the governorates of Egypt **Music:** traditional Egyptian music and dance



Let's remember !



كلمات

	Word	Arabic		Word	Arabic
	polar	قطبي		desert	صحراء
	grassland	مراعي / أرض عشبية		wetland	أرض رطبة
	baby	طفل رضيع		toddler	طفل يحبو
	adult	شخص بالغ		teenager	مراهق
	article	مقال		advertisement	إعلان
	headline	عنوان رئيسي		caption	تعليق
	vitamins	فيتامينات		protein	بروتين
	nutrients	عناصر غذائية		fiber	ألياف
	first-aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية		syringe	سرنجة
	bandage	ضمادة		crutches	عكاز

Help your child revise these words.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

lake	بحيرة	river	نهر
oasis	واحة	spring	ينبوع ماء

needle	إبرة	pole	قطب
compass	بوصلة	magnet	مغناطيس

sloth	الدب الكسلان	cheetah	فهد
macaw	المكاو (ببغاء أمريكي)	chimpanzee	قرد الشمبانزي

Look and read.



This is a bracelet[1]. It's made of wood[2].

This is a wheelchair[3]. It's made of metal[4].





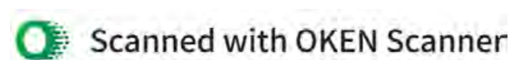
We used to go to the museum on Saturdays.

There's too much water in the cup.



1. سوار 2. خشب 3. كرسي متحرك 4. معدن

Help your child look and read. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر و يقرأ.



1 Read and match.

1. Did Amir use to play boardgames?
2. How many books are on the shelf?
3. Is there enough paper in the printer?
4. If I drop this plastic cup, will it break?

a. No, it won't.
b. No, there isn't.
c. Yes, he did.
d. There are four.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You shouldn't eat too much ....
   a) sugar b) salad c) vegetables d) fruit
2. Veins carry blood .... the heart.
   a) away from b) to c) on d) in
3. Triplets are three ....
   a) lions b) sisters c) siblings d) goats
4. A .... checks the story before it is printed.
   a) copy editor b) designer c) farmer d) doctor
5. The body absorbs .... from our food.
   a) air b) saliva c) blood d) nutrients
6. A magnet will pick up .... objects.
   a) wooden b) glass c) metal d) plastic
7. Artists use shading to make a picture look ....
   a) tiny b) small c) three-dimensional d) flat

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fast - run - you - How - can - ? ....
2. like - it - What - does - taste - ? ....

Read and act.

Fares : Hello! Can I interview[1] you for our school newspaper?

Doctor : Yes, of course[2]!

Fares : Thank you! I'm writing an article[3] about the new hospital. Is it very big?

Doctor : Yes, it is. It can help lots of patients to get better from injuries and diseases[4].

Fares : That's great. How many doctors and nurses work there?

Doctor : Oh, I don't know exactly[5], but there are a lot.

Fares : Do you think it was important to build a new hospital?

Doctor : Yes, I do. The old hospital was quite small. Now we have lots of new equipment, so we can do more scans[6] and surgery.

Fares : That's fantastic. Thank you for your help.

Read and learn.



When you **ride a bike**, you need a **helmet** to protect your **head**.

عندما تركب دراجة، تحتاج إلى خوذة لتحمي رأسك

All living things need **water**.

كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إلى الماء





Phonics



Listen and say.



straw
ماصة



pollution
تلوث



polar bear
الدب القطبي



swamp
مستنقع



race
سباق



treasure
كنز



article
مقال



tea
شاي



moon
القمر



grassland
مراعي



tent
خيمة



generous
كريم



cobra
ثعبان الكوبرا



bandage
ضماده



river
نهر

Help your child read and learn.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

many - article - interview - course

Sara : Hello! Can I .... (1) .... you for our school newspaper?

Doctor : Yes, of .... (2) .... !

Sara : I'm writing an .... (3) .... about the new hospital. Is it very big?

Doctor : Yes, it is.

Sara : How .... (4) .... doctors and nurses work there?

Doctor : I don't know exactly, but there are a lot.

Sara : That's fantastic. Thank you for your help.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... throw balls in the classroom.
   a) mustn't b) must c) should d) have to
2. I've .... drunk apple tea.
   a) yet b) never c) for d) ever
3. .... you freeze water, it becomes ice.
   a) If b) So c) But d) And
4. Printers .... made of cotton and paper.
   a) don't b) aren't c) isn't d) didn't
5. Dad .... go to the hospital for an operation.
   a) has to b) has c) does d) have to
6. The telegraph .... for sending Morse code.
   a) used b) using c) was used d) uses

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. If you don't press this button,the printer .... work.
   a) isn't b) wasn't c) will d) won't
8. A caption is .... under a photograph.
   a) wrote b) write c) writes d) written

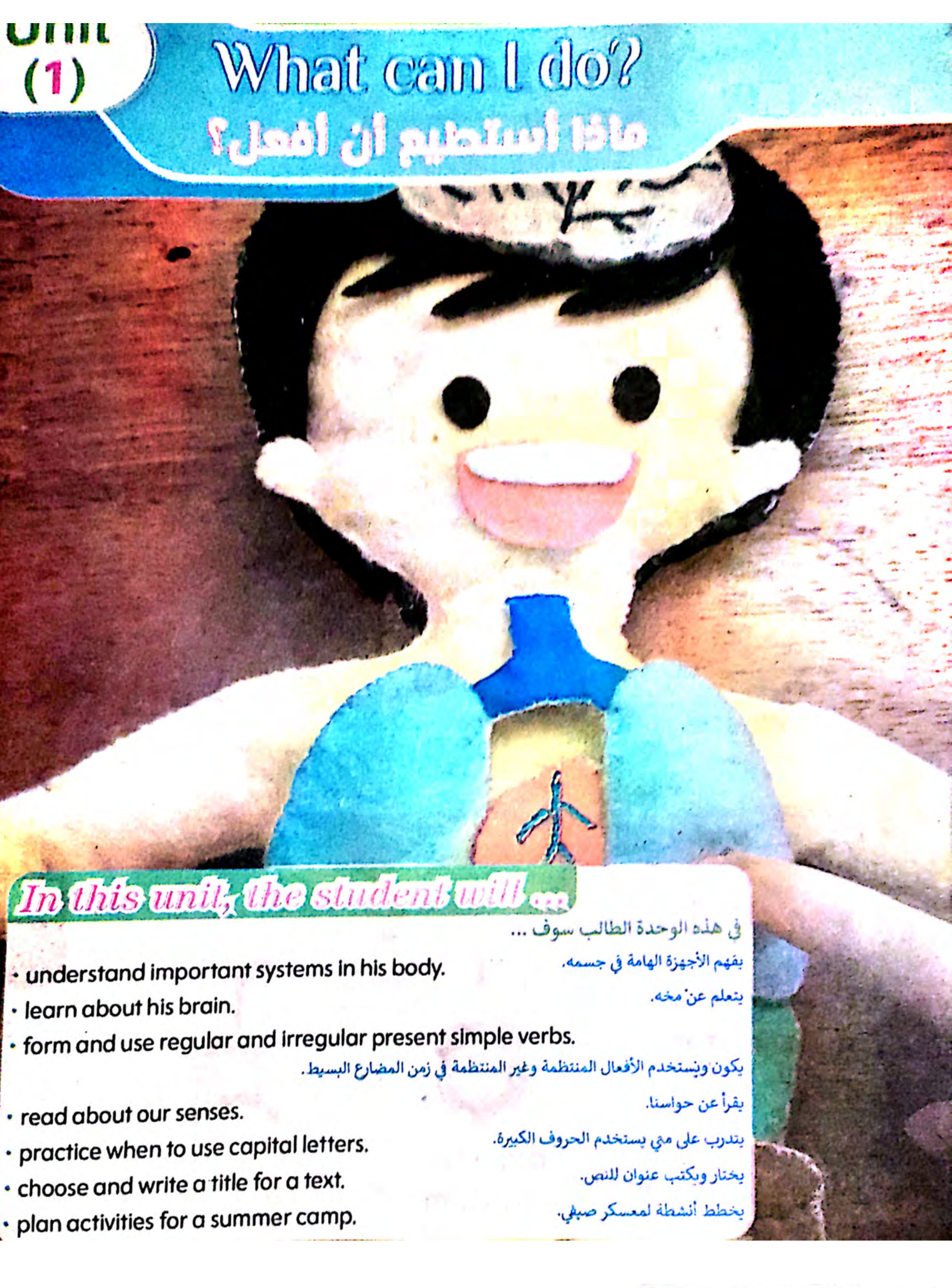
3 Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

1. When you stay positive, you feel happy. ☐
2. All living things need water. ☐
3. There isn't any sugar in fruit. ☐
4. A newborn kitten is about six months old. ☐
5. One teaspoon has four grams of sugar. ☐
6. There is salt water in an oasis. ☐

4 Circle the word with a different sound.

1. audio musical vehicle
2. draw straw swamp
3. nutrition dangerous digestion
4. fiction race city
5. food tent mood
6. nervous enormous acacia


Theme (1) I discover myself



Unit (1)

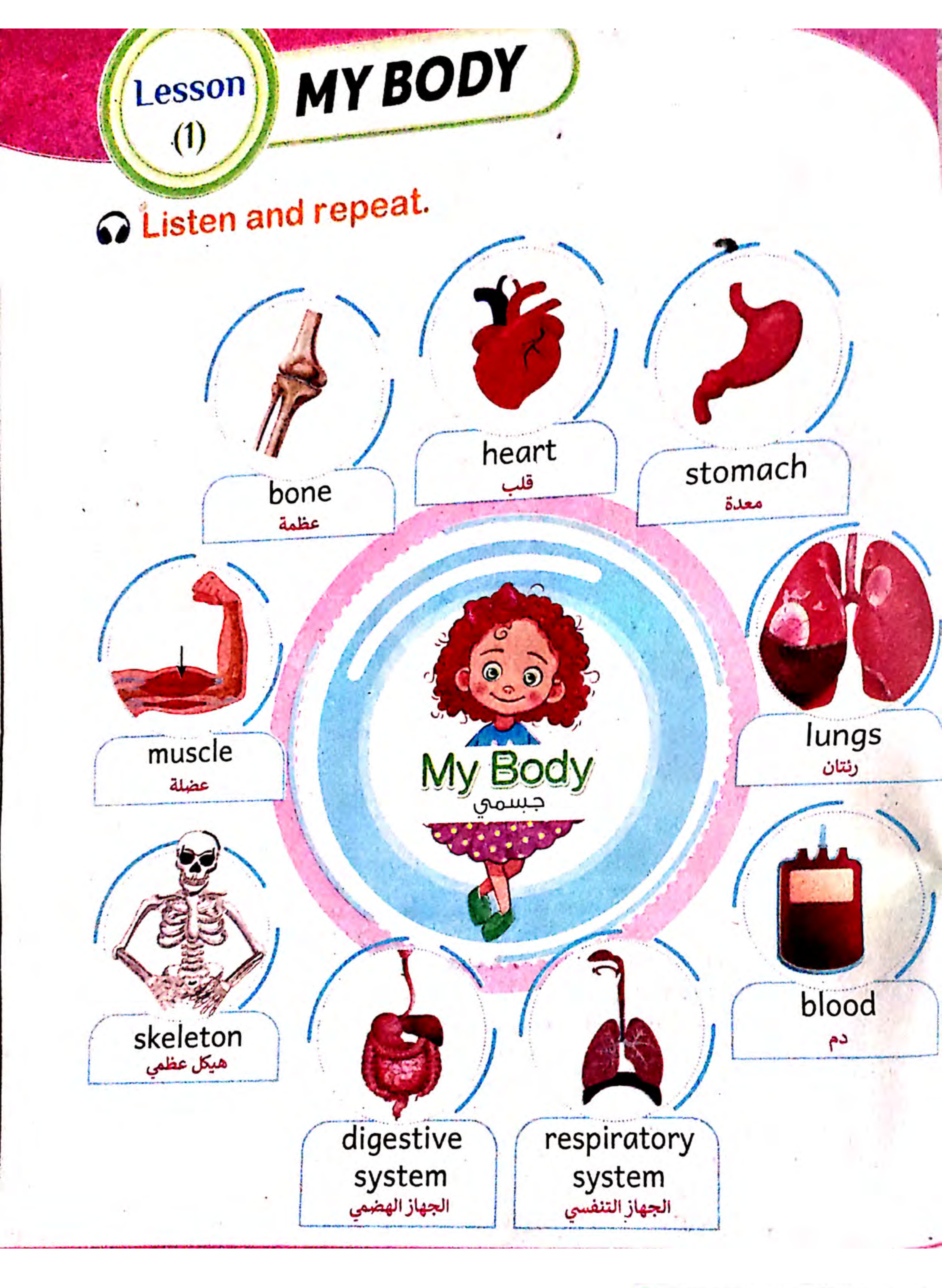
What can I do?

ماذا أستطيع أن أفعل؟

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- understand important systems in his body.
  يفهم الأجهزة الهامة في جسمه.
- learn about his brain.
  يتعلم عن مخه.
- form and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.
  يكون ويستخدم الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- read about our senses.
  يقرأ عن حواسنا.
- practice when to use capital letters.
  يتدرب على متى يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.
- choose and write a title for a text.
  يختار ويكتب عنوان للنص.
- plan activities for a summer camp.
  يخطط أنشطة لمعسكر صيفي.


Lesson
(1)
MY BODY
Listen and repeat.
bone
عظمة
heart
قلب
stomach
معدة
muscle
عضلة
My Body
جسمي
lungs
رئتان
skeleton
هيكل عظمي
digestive system
الجهاز الهضمي
respiratory system
الجهاز التنفسي
blood
دم





Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

special liquid	سائل خاص	strong	قوي	mouth	فم
organ	عضو (في الجسم)	energy	طاقة	nose	أنف
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	اكسجين		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	chew	يمضغ	chewed
swallow	يبتلع	swallowed	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
pump	يضخ	pumped	protect	يحمي	protected
attach	يوصل / يربط	attached	move	يتحرك	moved
lift	يرفع	lifted	pass	يمر	passed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go to	يذهب إلى	change ... into	يحول ... إلى
breathe in ... through	نتنفس ... من خلال	pass to	يمر إلى
make up of	يتكون من	attached to	متصل بـ
through the nose	خلال الأنف	make us strong	يجعلنا أقوياء



Did you know?



There are about five liters of blood in the human body.

يوجد حوالى خمسة لترات من الدم في جسم الإنسان.

Read and learn.

Digestive system الجهاز الهضمي

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

نستخدم الجهاز الهضمي عندما نأكل ونشرب. نمضغ ونبلع الطعام ثم يذهب إلى المعدة.
في المعدة يقوم سائل خاص بتحويل الطعام إلى طاقة وعناصر غذائية نحتاجها في أجسامنا.



Respiratory system الجهاز التنفسي

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

نستخدم الجهاز التنفسي عندما نتنفس. نستنشق الهواء من خلال أنفنا ويذهب الهواء إلى رئتينا.
في الرئتين يمر الأكسجين في الهواء إلى الدم. يضخ قلبنا هذا الدم حول جسمنا.



Bones and muscles العظام والعضلات

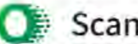
Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

يتكون هيكلنا العظمي من جميع العظام الموجودة في جسدنا. تجعلنا العظام أقوياء وتحمي أعضائنا. تتصل العضلات بعظامنا وترفع العظام وتجعلها تستدير لتجعلنا نتحرك.



Help your child read and learn.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.





1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system when we eat and drink.
   a) circulatory b) respiratory c) digestive d) nervous
2. When we eat, we chew and .... our food.
   a) drink b) put c) swallow d) pump
3. The food goes to our ....
   a) brain b) stomach c) head d) nose
4. A liquid changes the food in our stomach into ....
   a) oil b) blood c) water d) energy

2 | Listen and complete.

1. Our skeleton is made up of all the .... in our body.
2. Bones make us .... and protect our organs.
3. .... are attached to our bones.
4. Muscles lift and .... bones to make us move.

3 | Read and complete the text with words from the box.

stomach - digestive - energy - swallow - chew

We use our 1) .... system when we eat and drink. We 2) .... and 3) .... food, then it goes to our 4) .... In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into 5) .... and nutrients.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) air b) water c) blood d) heart

2. Our .... pumps blood around our body

a) heart b) muscles c) blood d) nose

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which organ do we use when we breathe?

....

4. Where does the air go when we breathe?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we .... , we use our respiratory system.

a) eat b) move c) breathe d) drink

2. We use our .... system when we eat.

a) digestive b) respiratory c) nervous d) muscles

3. The food goes .... our stomach when we swallow it.

a) in b) at c) on d) to

4. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food .... energy and nutrients.

a) of b) into c) on d) under

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. We breathe in air through our ....

a) stomach b) muscle c) head d) nose

6. Our heart .... blood around our body.

a) chews b) swallows c) pumps d) goes

7. Our skeleton is made .... all the bones in our body.

a) from b) into c) off d) up of

8. .... are attached to our bones.

a) Teeth b) Muscles c) Noses d) Mouths

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. chew - swallow - We - food - and - .

....

2. heart - Our - blood - pumps - our body - around - .

....

3. our organs - us - Bones - protect - strong - make - and - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our body"

Guiding words:

(many systems - digestive - chew - energy - respiratory - breathe)

....

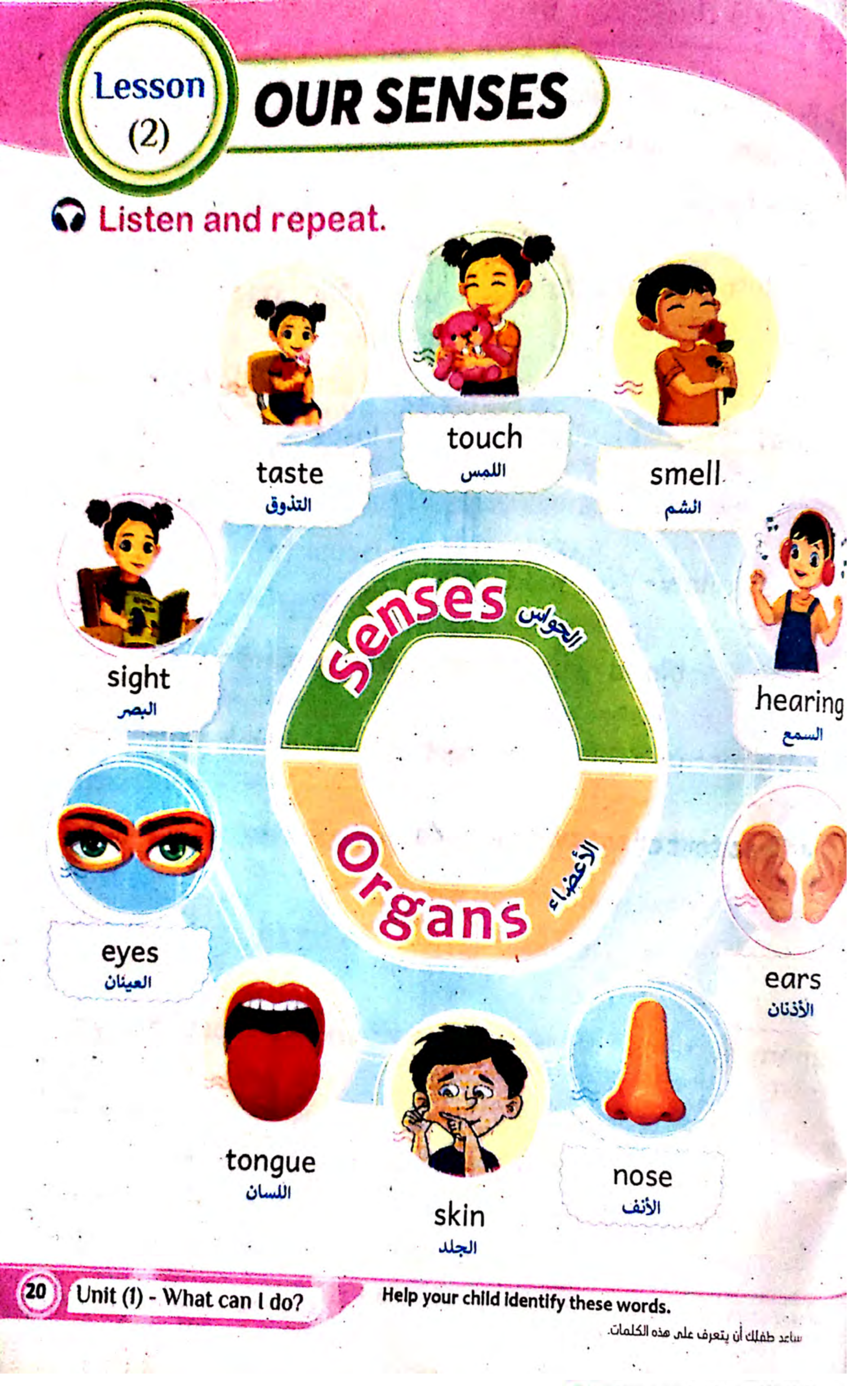
....

....

....

Lesson (2) OUR SENSES

Listen and repeat.



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sweet	حلو المذاق	Spanish	اللغة الأسبانية
deaf	أصم	savory	مملح / تركيبات
blind	كفيف / أعمى	combinations	مجموعات
sign language	لغة الإشارة	information	معلومات
Braille	طريقة برايل للقراءة (للمكفوفين)	complete	تام / كامل
dots	نقاط	fireworks	ألعاب نارية
letter	حرف	world	عالم
code	شفرة	difficulty	صعوبة
Arabic	اللغة العربية	versions	إصدارات
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	loud	عالي الصوت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
taste	يتذوق	tasted	touch	يلمس	touched
invent	يخترع	invented	communicate	يتواصل	communicated
work	يعمل	worked	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	hear	يسمع	heard
smell	يشم	smelt	feel	يشعر	felt
understand	يفهم	understood	speak	يتحدث	spoke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

think about	يفكر في	What kind of ....?	ما نوع .... ؟
different from	مختلف عن	find out	يعرف / يكتشف
all the time	طوال الوقت	look at	ينظر إلى
lots of	كثير من	feel soft	لها ملمس ناعم

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the text. How do we use our different senses?



We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

- نحن نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لتساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا. نحن نستخدم ...نرى وأذننا لنسمع. نحن نشم بأنفنا ونتذوق بلساننا ويمكننا أن نشعر عن طريق بشرتنا (جلدنا).

Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

...أين أنت الآن. ماذا يمكنك أن ترى؟ ماذا يمكنك أن تسمع؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت وتستقبل الكثير من المعلومات.

Look at the photo. What can the child smell? What do you think he c... feel? What kind of food do you enjoy? Some foods are sweet, and some a... savory. We taste lots of different kinds of food every day.

...ر إلى الصورة. ماذا يستطيع الطفل أن يشم؟ بماذا يشعر في رأيك؟ أي نوع من الطعام تستمتع به؟ بعض الأطعمة حلوة ...اق وبعضها مالح. نحن نتذوق الكثير من أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة كل يوم.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways t... communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can lear... sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanis... and there are different versions of it around the world – sign language i... Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

...عض الناس لا يستطيعون أن يروا أو يسمعوا، لذلك يكون لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل. الصم أو من لديهم صعوبة في ...سمع يمكنهم تعلم لغة الإشارة. إنها لغة كاملة مثل اللغة الإنجليزية أو العربية أو الإسبانية، ويوجد منها إصدارات مختلفة ...ول العالم - لغة الإشارة في مصر مختلفة عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing ca... use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter... number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the... dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

...طريقة برايل هي شفرة يمكن أن يستخدمها الأشخاص المكفوفين أو من لديهم صعوبة في البصر للقراءة، فهذه اللغة لها ...ركيبات مختلفة من النقاط. يمكن أن تكون حرفًا أو رقمًا أو علامة ترقيم أو كلمة. يمكن للشخص الذي يقرأ أن يلمس النقاط ...يعرف معناها. قام باختراع طريقة برايل «لويس برايل».

Help your child read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص.



Capital letters

We use capital letters:

نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة:

1) **At the beginning of the sentence.** ١) في بداية الجملة.

We use our senses every day.

2) **With names of languages.** ٢) مع أسماء اللغات.

English , Arabic , Spanish

3) **With names of countries and cities.** ٣) مع أسماء الدول والمدن.

Egypt , USA , Cairo , Luxor

4) **With names of persons.** ٤) مع أسماء الأشخاص.

Louis Braille

5) **The pronoun (I)** ٥) الضمير (I)

I'm happy.

6) **Days of the week** ٦) مع أيام الأسبوع

Saturday , Monday

7) **Months of the year** ٧) مع شهور السنة

August , February

☆ Rewrite these sentences with capital letters.

1. i live in aswan in egypt.

....

2. yusuf speaks arabic and english.

....

3. my teacher is called Mrs heba.

....



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... every day.
   a) senses b) books c) friends d) glasses
2. We use our .... to see.
   a) nose b) mouth c) tongue d) eyes
3. We .... with our nose.
   a) smell b) taste c) kick d) touch
4. We can feel with our ....
   a) skin b) tongue c) eyes d) ears

2 Listen and complete.

1. Braille is a code which people who are .... use to read.
2. It has different combinations of ....
3. Blind people can .... the dots to find out what they mean.
4. Braille was invented by ....

3 Read and match.

1. We see with our
2. We use our ears
3. We can feel with
4. Deaf people communicate

a) to hear.
b) in sign language.
c) eyes.
d) our skin.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We have five senses. We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. There are different versions of sign language around the world.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The main idea of the text is our ....
   a) eyes b) nose c) teeth d) senses
2. .... people can't hear.
   a) Deaf b) Mad c) Blind d) Sad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many senses do we have? ....
4. How do deaf people communicate? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... to see.
   a) nose b) eyes c) mouth d) hand
2. We can .... with our ears.
   a) hear b) touch c) feel d) smell
3. They smell with their ....
   a) mouth b) ear c) nose d) eyes
4. We can taste with our ....
   a) skin b) nose c) tongue d) finger

5. I can feel with my ....

a) skin b) nose c) hair d) tongue

6. Blind people can't ....

a) hear b) smell c) feel d) see

7. People who are deaf use .... languag

a) Arabic b) English c) picture d) sign

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use - eyes - see - We - our - to - .

....

2. can - What - hear - you - ?

....

3. can - skin - We - feel - with - our - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

Guiding words:

(see - hear - smell - touch)

....

....

8 Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

1. mr gamal prefers arabic music to african music.

....

2. louis braille invented the braille code.

....

3. mrs Azza reads braille because she can't see well.

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



LANGUAGE

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

lounge	صالة / غرفة الجلوس	right hemisphere	الشق الأيمن (من المخ)
disappointed	خائب الأمل / محبط	left hemisphere	الشق الأيسر (من المخ)
memory	ذاكرة	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
brain	المخ	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
activity	نشاط	brain stem	جذع المخ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

creative	مُبدع / مُبتكر	balance	توازن
cookery	فن الطبخ	paper	ورق
math	الرياضيات	choices	اختيارات
science	العلوم	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
art	الرسم	movement	حركة
solving problems	حل المشاكل	artistic	ذو حس فني
tired	مُتعب	light bulb	مصباح كهربي
thoughts	أفكار		



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
tidy	يرتب	tidied	smile	يبتسم	smiled
practice	يمارس	practiced	paint	يلون	painted
control	يتحكم	controlled	move	يتحرك	moved
join	يربط	joined	remember	يتذكر	remembered
answer	يجيب	answered			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	do	يفعل	did
draw	يرسم	drew	go	يذهب	went
take	يأخذ	took	make	يصنع	made
run	يجري	ran	know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	after	بعد
Let's + inf.	هيا بنا	before	قبل
make choices	يختار	do something	يفعل شيئًا
look disappointed	يبدو محبطًا	practice football	يمارس كرة القدم
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	paint a picture	يلون صورة
do drawing	يرسم	I think	أعتقد

Read the story.

What do Adam and Kareema like to do?

ماذا يحب آدم وكريمة أن يفعلا؟

'It is Saturday, so there's no school. What are we doing today, Mom?' asks Kareema.

'We have to tidy the lounge. Then you can choose what you want to do,' says Mom.

Kareema's brother Adam smiles. 'I know what I want to do!' he says. 'Let's go to the park. We can run and play. I want to practice football.' Kareema looks disappointed.

'What's the matter?' asks Mom.

'I like the park,' Kareema answers. 'But I want to do something creative this afternoon. I would like to draw or paint a picture. Adam goes to the park every week.'

'Kareema always does drawing!' says Adam.

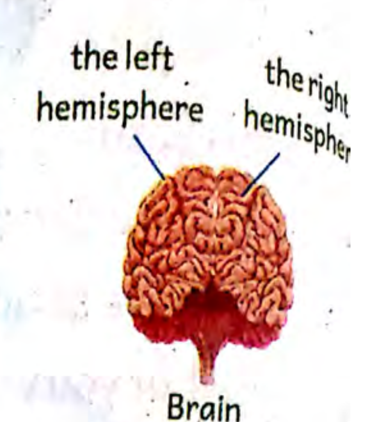
Mom smiles. 'I think we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can draw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge.'

إنه يوم السبت، لذا لا يوجد يوم دراسي. تسأل كريمة : «ماذا سنفعل اليوم يا أمي؟» تقول الأم : «علينا أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس. ثم يمكنكم اختيار ما تريدون القيام به.» يبتسم آدم شقيق كريمة ويقول «أعرف ما أريد أن أفعله اليوم! هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة، يمكننا الجري واللعب. أريد أن أمارس كرة القدم.» تبدو كريمة محبطة. تسأل الأم : «ما الأمر؟» تجيب كريمة: «أنا أحب الحديقة، ولكنني أريد أن أفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا وقت الظهيرة هذا اليوم. أود أن أرسم أو ألون صورة. يذهب آدم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع». يقول آدم : «كريمة ترسم دائمًا!» تبتسم الأم وتقول «أعتقد أنه يمكننا جميعًا أن نكون سعداء اليوم. هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة. يمكننا اللعب هناك ويمكننا إحضار أقلام الرصاص والورق معنا، ويمكنك الرسم في الحديقة أيضًا. لكن أولًا دعونا نرتب غرفة الجلوس.»









1- Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make.

١- يتحكم مخنا في كيفية الحركة لدينا وما نتذكره والإختيارات التي نقوم بها.

2- The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.

٢- المناطق الرئيسية الثلاث في الدماغ هي المخ والمخيخ وجذع الدماغ وكلهم لهم وظائف هامة.

3- The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak and our memories. The cerebellum controls movements and balance.

٣- منطقة المخ تتحكم في مشاعرنا وأفكارنا وكيف نتحدث وذكرياتنا. منطقة المخيخ تتحكم في الحركة والتوازن.

4- The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.

٤- يربط جذع المخ الجزئين معًا.

5- The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body.

٥- الشق الأيسر من المخ يتحكم في الجانب الأيمن من الجسم.

6- The right hemisphere of the brain controls the left side of the body.

٦- الشق الأيمن من المخ يتحكم في الجانب الأيسر من الجسم.

7- More people use their right hand to write with.

٧- يستخدم كثير من الناس يدهم اليمنى في الكتابة.

8- Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

٨- بعض الناس عسر الايدي (يستخدمون اليد اليسرى) مبدعين وفنانين (لديهم حس ابدعي وفني).

9- The left hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.

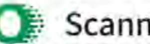
٩- الشق الأيسر من المخ هام في الحساب والعلوم وحل المشكلات.

10- We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

١٠- نستخدم الشق الأيمن في الأنشطة الإبداعية مثل الرسم والموسيقى.

Help your child identify these information.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه المعلومات.



Read and learn.

Fact file

Ten Fun Brain Facts ! عشر حقائق مثيرة عن المخ !

1- The brain is the most important organ [1] of the body.

2- An adult brain weighs [2] about 1400 grams.

3- About 75% of the brain is made up of water.

4- Your brain continues [3] to grow until you're about 18 years old.

5- Your brain uses about 20% of the oxygen and blood in your body.

6- Information [4] travels from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometerss per hour.

7- Every minute about one liter of blood flows through the brain.

8- While you are sleeping, your brain goes through all the memories [5] of the day.

9- The average brain [6] has 12,000 to 60,000 thoughts a day!

10- When you are awake, your brain makes enough electricity to power a small light bulb.

1. عضو في الجسم 2. يزن 3. يستمر 4. معلومات 5. ذكريات 6. متوسط المخ

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage We use the present simple to talk about:

- Something that is true. حقيقي.
  e.g. Cows give us milk.
- Something that happens regularly. يحدث بانتظام.
  e.g. I play football every day.

Form (I / We / You / They / Plural noun) + inf. مصدر الفعل...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He / She / It / Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Spelling Rules

- We add (s) to most verbs. نضيف (S) إلى معظم الأفعال.

walk → walks eat → eats

- Verbs ending in (ss / sh / ch / o / x) take (es).

الأفعال المنتهية بـ(ss / sh / ch / o / x) يضاف لها (es).

wash → washes watch → watches mix → mixes
go → goes cross → crosses

- Verbs ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (ies).

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies)

carry → carries study → studies

- Verbs ending in (a vowel + y), we add only (s).

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك، نضيف فقط (S).

play → plays obey → obeys

Help your child identify the present simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المضارع البسيط.

Keywords

always	دائمًا	usually	عادةً
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا	every (day, week, ...)	كل (يوم ، أسبوع ، ..)
on (Mondays, Fridays, ...)			في أيام (الأثنين ، الجمعة ، .....)

e.g. Adam goes to the park every week.

e.g. Kareem always does drawing.

Note: Some verbs have special forms in the present.

بعض الأفعال لها أشكال خاصة في زمن المضارع

1 Verb to "Be"

I → am - am not

He / She / It / Singular noun → is - isn't

We / You / They / Plural noun → are - aren't

- I am happy.
- He is hungry.
- Children are not at the park.

2 Verb to "Have"

I / We / You / They / Plural noun → have - don't have

He / She / It / Singular noun → has - doesn't have

- Tarek has two sisters.
- I have one brother.
- He doesn't have a car.

3 Verb to "Do"

I / We / You / They / Plural noun → do - dc

He / She / It / Singular noun → does -

- We do cookery class.
- I don't do homework late.
- Ali does art class.

Help your child identify the present form of verb to be / do / have.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على صيغة الأفعال be و have و do في زمن المضارع البسيط.

1 Listen and complete.

1. There are two halves, or .... in our brain.
2. The .... hemisphere is important for math, scien[ce] and solving problems.
3. We use the .... hemisphere in creative activities.
4. .... and music are creative activities.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

What - tidy - go - do

Adam : What are we doing today?

Kareem : We have to .... (1) .... the loung[e]

Adam : What do you want to ......(2) ....

Kareem : Let's .... (3) .... to the par[k]

Adam : .... (4) .... can we do there[?]

Kareem : We can run and play.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They .... tire[d]
   a) be b) is c) are d) do
2. Hana .... drawing at the art clas[s]
   a) do b) does c) are d) be
3. I always .... TV in the evening
   a) watch b) watched c) watches d) watching
4. Let's .... to the zoo.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. What .... you doing today?

a) am b) is c) are d) do

6. At the park, children can .... tennis.

a) draw b) play c) write d) sleep

7. .... is the matter?

a) What b) Where c) How d) When

8. I like to .... a picture.

a) write b) read c) paint d) play

9. There .... no school today.

a) is b) are c) have d) were

10. Hoda .... hungry.

a) am b) is c) are d) does

11. Adam always .... to the park.

a) go b) went c) going d) goes

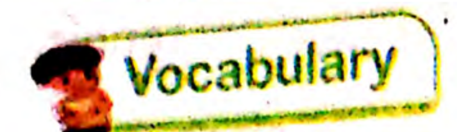
12. I .... two sisters.

a) do b) has c) have d) having

4 Correct the verbs.

1. She .... (be) hungry.
2. We .... (plays) tennis after school.
3. Tarek .... (have) two sisters.
4. Kareem .... (look) disappointed.

Lesson (4) PARASPORTS



Vocabulary كلمات

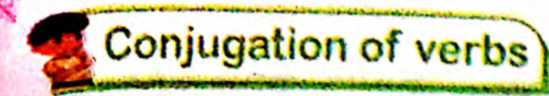
Paralympic Games = Paralympics ...ب البارالمبية (الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)

parasports	الألعاب الرياضية للمعاقين	bronze medal	...برونزية
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	athletes	...ين الرياضيين
champion	بطل رياضي	international	... / عالمي
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	dedication	...س (الوقت)
silver medal	ميدالية فضية		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

disabilities	إعاقات	national team	...يق القومي
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	hard work	...ل جاد
world championship	بطولة العالم	level	...توى
Egypt Cup	كأس مصر	country	...لة
female	أنثى	opportunities	...ص
swimmer	سباح	New Zealand	...لة نيوزيلندا
runner	عدّاء / متسابق	Africa	...رة أفريقيا
race	سباق	Brazil	...ولة البرازيل

sitting volleyball ...كرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	**Past**	**Present**	**Past**
join ينضم إلى	joined	win يفوز	won
include يتضمن	included	take part يشترك	took part
train يتدرب	trained	get to يصل إلى	got to
reach يصل إلى	reached	hold يعقد / يقيم	held

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

is held in	ينعقد - يقام في	take part in	يشارك في
win a medal	يفوز بميدالية	hard work	عمل جاد
100-meter race	سباق ١٠٠ متر	do a sport	يمارس رياضة
have fun = enjoy	يستمتع	take years	يستغرق سنوات

take place = happen يحدث

athletes with disabilities الرياضيون ذو الاحتياجات الخاصة

Read and identify.

Types of medals أنواع الميداليات



a gold medal
1st winner
(First place)



a silver medal
2nd winner
(Second place)



a bronze medal
3rd winner
(Third place)

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Aya Ayman

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has w the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egypti Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016.

She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

الألعاب البارالمبية هي مسابقة دولية للاعبين الرياضيين ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة. مثل دورة الألعاب الأولمبية، تحدث كل أربع
ين، وتقام في دولة مختلفة كل مرة. دورة الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة هي مجال هام من مجالات الرياضة، ومصر
ا العديد من الرياضيين الذين يشاركون في هذه المسابقات.
أيمن عباس هي بطلة في السباحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاث مرات. وكانت أول سباحة مصرية في الألعاب البارالمبية في ريو عام ٢٠١٦.
ن بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية في العديد من البلدان المختلفة.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races.



Mostafa Fathall

He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions.

He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

صطفى فتح الله هو عداء يشارك في سباقات ١٠٠ متر و ٢٠٠ متر و ٤٠٠ متر. التحق بالمنتخب الوطني في مصر عام ٢٠٠٦، وشارك في
عديد من المسابقات الدولية. وقد فاز بالعديد من الميداليات بما في ذلك الميدالية الذهبية في بطولة العالم في نيوزيلندا.


Ahmed Abdel Fattah

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport they enjoy.

يلعب أحمد عبدالفتاح الكرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة. شارك في دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو عام ٢٠١٦ ، حيث فاز الفريق بالميدالية البرونزية. لعب مع فريقه في أفريقيا والبرازيل وفازوا بالعديد من المسابقات الدولية لصالح مصر. أن تكون رياضيًا أولمبيًا لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة أو بطلًا أولمبيًا فذلك يتطلب سنوات من التفاني والعمل الجاد. لا يمكن للجميع الوصول إلى هذا المستوى، ولكن هناك العديد من الفرص للجميع للمشاركة والاستمتاع بممارسة الرياضة التي يستمتعون بها.

Read again and tick (✓ or ✗).

1. The Paralympics is held every year. ( )
2. People from all over the world can take part in the Paralympics. ( )
3. The Paralympics is held in the same place. ( )
4. You need to work hard to take part in parasports. ( )
5. No Egyptian female athlete took part in parasports competitions. ( )



النص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a .... champi
   a) swimming b) running c) sitting volleyball d) tennis
2. Aya won the Egypt Cup .... tim
   a) four b) ten c) three d) five
3. She was the .... female Egyptian Paralymp swimmer in Rio in 2016.
   a) first b) second c) fifth d) third
4. She has .... lots of meda
   a) lost b) won c) made d) bought

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

take - What - disabilities - competition

Aya : Do you like sports?

Ziad : Yes, I like sports very much.

Aya : .... (1) .... is the Paralympic Games

Ziad : It's an international .... (2) ....
for athletes with .... (3) ....

Aya : How often does it .... (4) .... place

Ziad : Every four years.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming ....
   a) champion b) hero c) player d) swimmer
2. She has .... a gold medal.
   a) taken b) won c) played d) earned
3. Have fun and .... a sport you enjoy.
   a) put b) give c) do d) take
4. He came first and won a .... medal.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) wooden
5. Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting ....
   a) tennis b) volleyball c) football d) basketball

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport they enjoy.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

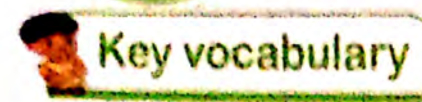
1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Aya b) Ahmed c) Ali d) Mona
2. Ahmed's team won a .... medal.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) platinum

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Ahmed Abdel Fattah play?
   ....
4. When did he take part in Rio Olympics?
   ....



WRITING PARAGRAPHS



كلمات رئيسية

exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	mental
healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي	summer camp
unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية	physical

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

routine	نظام يومي	sugar
hard	صعب / شاق	fats
video games	ألعاب فيديو	active
tips	نصائح	clear
especially	خصوصًا	unimportant information
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
develop	ينمي / يطور	developed
stay	يبقى	stayed
start	يبدأ	started
summarize	يلخص	summarized
organise	ينظم	organised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose
drink	يشرب	drank
find	يجد	found
give	يعطي	gave
write	يكتب	wrote
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
as well	أيضًا	try to	يحاول أن
play on	يلعب على	a mixture of	خليط من
aged	يبلغ من العمر	for lunch	لوجبة الغذاء
easy for	سهل لـ	on hot days	في الأيام الحارة
It's fun to	إنه من الممتع أن	choose for	يختار لـ
plan for	يخطط لـ	make friends	يكوّن صداقات
full of	مملوء بـ		

Expression	المعنى
It is a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بدون حركة لفترة طويلة
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التمرينات الرياضية

Writing Tip !

1- How to choose a title for a text كيف تختار عنوانًا لنص

A. You need to summarize what it is about on a quick and clear way.
تحتاج إلى تلخيص موضوع النص بطريقة سريعة وواضحة.

B. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
أنت لا تحتاج إلى أي معلومات إضافية أو غير هامة.

C. It's good if you can make the title funny or interesting, too.
من الجيد لو أمكنك جعل العنوان ممتعًا أو شيقًا أيضًا.

2- How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

- A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences).
الفقرة تتكون من العديد من الجمل (من ثلاث إلى ثمان جمل).



1. a topic (introduction) sentence — جملة المقدمة
2. main (body) sentences — جمل رئيسية
3. a conclusion sentence — جملة ختامية

Help your child identify how to write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة فقرة.

- The introduction sentence introduces the topic.
جملة المقدمة الموضوع.
- The main sentences are in the middle of the paragraph. They give more information.
ل الرئيسية تكون في منتصف الفقرة وتعطى معلومات أكثر عن الموضوع.
- The conclusion sentence is last. It finishes the paragraph.
لة الختام تكون في النهاية وتنهي الفقرة.

title

Unhealthy habits

introduction sentence

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well.

main sentences

Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometime people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV o playing on the computer.

Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

conclusion sentence

Help your child identify the parts of a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي أجزاء الفقرة.



Fill in the spaces with.

introduction - conclusion - main - title

1) ....

How to start an exercise routine

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

2) .... sentence

3) .... sentences

4) .... sentence

Listen and read.

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet?
A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow.

نحتاج جميعا إلى تناول نظام غذائي جيد للبقاء بصحة جيدة، لكن ما هو النظام الغذائي الجيد ؟ يشتمل النظام الغذائي الجيد على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة والكثير من الماء للشرب. يتكون مخنا من حوالي ٧٥٪ من الماء ويحتاج الماء ليعمل بشكل جيد. ينبغي أن نأكل الفاكهة الطازجة والخضراوات لأنها تحتوى على الكثير من الألياف ومليئة بالفيتامينات والمعادن. نحن بحاجة إليها لصحة البشرة والعضلات والعظام والأسنان. ينبغي أن نأكل الكثير من البروتين أيضا، لأن هذا يساعدنا على النمو.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy , but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

الأطعمة التي تحتوي على البروتين تشمل الأسماك والجبن والبيض والفول والمكسرات واللحوم. نحن بحاجة إلى الدهون من أجل جهاز عصبي صحي. وهذا يشمل المكسرات والأسماك الزيتية والزيت والزبدة. الكربوهيدرات مثل الخبز والأرز والمكرونة تمدنا بالطاقة. يمنحنا السكر أيضا الطاقة، لكن الإفراط في تناول السكر ليس مفيدًا لنا. السكر موجود في الكيك والكعك المحلى والحلوى، لذا حاول ألا تفرط في تناولها. تناول وجبة غذائية جيدة بها الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة المختلفة، وستكون بصحة جيدة.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Healthy diet

Guiding words:

(good - fresh food - fresh fruit - vitamins - protein)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Review on Unit (1)

Vocabulary

respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	stomach	المعدة
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	blood	الدم
tongue (taste)	اللسان (التذوق)	muscles	العضلات
nose (smell)	الأنف (الشم)	brain	المخ
ears (hearing)	الأذنان (السمع)	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
eyes (sight)	العينان (البصر)	lungs	الرئتان
skin (touch)	الجلد (اللمس)	bone	عظمة





Writing Corner

"My body"

Our body consists of many systems. We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. Muscles are attached to our bones. We need to keep our bodies strong and healthy.

"Unhealthy habits"

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

"Physical and mental activities"

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

"Tips for a healthy diet"

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

Help your child write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية.



Activities on Unit (1)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system when we breathe.
   a) digestive b) respiratory c) heart d) blood
2. We breathe in .... through our nose.
   a) air b) water c) perfume d) energy
3. The .... in the air is passed to the blood.
   a) carbon b) food c) oxygen d) water
4. The .... pumps blood around our body.
   a) lungs b) muscle c) heart d) bone

2 Listen and complete.

1. The Paralympic Games is an international ....
2. The Paralympic Games takes place every .... years.
3. It is held in a .... country each time.
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our 1) .... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our 2) ...., and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our sense are 3) .... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It's ... athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four ye... and is held in a different country each time. Being a Paralympic ath... takes years of dedication and hard work.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200 me... and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, ... has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won m... medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The text is about the ....
   a) Olympic Games b) Paralympic Games
   c) World Cup d) swimming competitions
2. "Takes place" means ....
   a) connects b) happens c) supports d) protects

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which races does Mostafa take part in ? ....
4. Is the Olympics different from the Paralympics? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of holiday. ( )
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the ....
   a) engineers b) tent makers c) doctors d) writers
4. Grandpa can't .... because his eyes aren't very goo...
   a) draw b) paint c) drive d) sew

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our heart .... the blood around our body.
   a) pump b) pumps c) pumping d) pumped
2. I .... to the club every day.
   a) go b) went c) going d) goes
3. We .... to eat a good diet to stay healthy.
   a) needing b) needs c) need d) needed
4. We breathe in air through our ....
   a) fingers b) nose c) eyes d) ears

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Games - is - The Paralympic - competition - an international - .

....

2. Who - language - uses - sign - ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Digestive system"

Guiding words:

eat - chew - stomach - special - liquid

....

....

....

....

....



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- understand the classification of animals.

  يفهم تصنيف الحيوانات.
- learn about the importance of size in the animal world.

  يتعلم عن أهمية الحجم في عالم الحيوان.
- form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs.

  يكّون صفات المقارنة وصفات التفضيل والظروف.
- read about invertebrates.

  يقرأ عن اللافقاريات.
- use contrasting ideas.

  يستخدم أفكارًا متناقضة.
- make a habitat report.



Lesson (1) VERTEBRATES

Listen, point and say.

vertebrates
فقاريات

fur
فرو

fins
زعانف

gills
خياشيم

scales
حراشف

beak
منقار

Help your child identify vertebrates.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحيوانات الفقارية (الفقاريات).

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية



mammals	ثدييات	reptiles	زواحف
amphibians	برمائيات	backbone	عمود فقري
birds	طيور	different	مختلف
toads	عُلجوم (ضفدع الطين)	moist	رطب
fish	أسماك	survive	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
whales	حيتان	habitat	مسكن / موطن / بيئة
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	river	نهر
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	saltwater	ماء مالح
seal	عجل البحر / الفقمة	wetland	أراضي رطبة
turtles	سلاحف	fresh water	ماء عذب
bat	خفاش	land	اليابسة
ostrich	نعامة	shapes	أشكال
smooth skin	جلد ناعم	feathers	ريش
except	ما عدا / باستثناء	wing	جناح
in addition	بالإضافة لذلك	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived
need	يحتاج	needed
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
discover	يكتشف	discovered
move	يتحرك	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
feed	يطعم	fed
give	يعطي	gave
lay	يضع (البيض)	laid
fly	يطير	flew
spend	يقضي	spent

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feed with	يغذي - يطعم بـ	such as	مثل
give birth to	يلد	take in	يمتص
live on	يتغذى على / يعيش على	keep warm	يبقى دافئا
made of	مصنوع من	come onto land	يخرج إلى اليابسة

Listen and read.

Vertebrates الفقاريات

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five different types of vertebrates.

الفقاريات هي الحيوانات التي لها عمود فقري، هناك خمسة أنواع مختلفة من الفقاريات.

Mammals الثدييات

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

الثدييات لديها شعر أو فراء على أجسامها. وهي من ذوات الدم الحار. وترضع الثدييات صغارها اللبن ومعظمها تلد الصغار. إنها لا تبيض، يعتبر البشر من الثدييات. معظم الثدييات تعيش على اليابسة، ولكن بعضها يعيش في البحر مثل الحيتان والفقمات (عجل البحر). الخفافيش هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي يمكنها الطيران.

Reptiles الزواحف

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

الزواحف من ذوات الدم البارد. هذا يعني أن عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت في الشمس للحفاظ على دفئهم. معظم الزواحف لديها أربعة أرجل ماعدا الثعابين ليس لديها أي أرجل. ليس لديها شعر أو فراء، لديهم قشور. بالإضافة إلى أن كل الزواحف تبيض. تعيش أغلب الزواحف على اليابسة. بعض الزواحف يمكن أن تعيش في الأنهار أو البحر مثل السلاحف ولكنهم يخرجون إلى اليابسة ليضعوا البيض.

Amphibians

البرمائيات

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

تستطيع البرمائيات العيش على اليابسة وفي الماء، لكنها تحتاج إلى الماء أو موطن رطب للبقاء على قيد الحياة. مثل الزواحف تعتبر البرمائيات من ذوات الدم البارد وتضع البيض ومع ذلك، فإن البرمائيات، مثل الضفادع وضفادع الطين، تضع بيضها في الماء. ولديها بشرة ناعمة وليس قشور. ويمكنها استنشاق الاكسجين من خلال جلدها ورئتيها.

Fish

الأسماك

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

تعيش الأسماك في الماء وتستنشق الأكسجين من خلال خياشيمها، لا يمكنها تنفس الهواء. تعد الأسماك من ذوات الدم البارد كما أنها تبيض. والأسماك لديها قشور، ويستخدمون الزعانف في الحركة. يوجد الآلاف من الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك في كل البيئات المائية - المياه المالحة والمياه العذبة والأراضي الرطبة.

Birds

الطيور

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks , which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

الطيور من ذوات الدم الحار ولكن ليس لديها فراء ولا شعر. فجميع الطيور لديها ريش وجميعها لديها أجنحة. الطيور تضع البيض الذي يكون صلبًا. معظم الطيور تستطيع الطيران، لكن بعضها لا يستطيع. لدي الطيور مناقير مصنوعة من العظام، لدى الطيور مناقير ذات أشكال مختلفة لأنها تأكل أطعمة مختلفة، بعض الطيور تأكل اللحوم وبعضها تأكل المكسرات وبعضها تأكل البذور.

Help your child read about animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات.





نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Reptiles are ....
   a) cold-blooded b) warm-blooded c) hot-blooded d) cool-blooded
2. They have to spend time in the ....
   a) moon b) underground c) sun d) water
3. Most reptiles have .... legs.
   a) ten b) five c) four d) six
4. They have ....
   a) scales b) fur c) fin d) hair

2 Listen and complete.

1. Birds are ....- blooded.
2. All birds have ....
3. Birds lay .... which are hard.
4. Most birds can .... but some can't.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are .... different types of vertebrates.
   a) four b) three c) five d) seven
2. Vertebrates are animals with a ....
   a) backbone b) fin c) gill d) beak
3. Mammals are ....-blooded.
   a) cold b) warm c) hot d) cool
4. .... are the only mammals that can fly.
   a) Elephants b) Cats c) Bats d) Rats

5 .... are cold-blooded.

a) Birds b) Mammals c) Reptiles d) Lions

6 Most reptiles have .... legs.

a) three b) ten c) four d) five

7 Amphibians need water or a .... habitat to survive.

a) dry b) moist c) ice d) hot

8 Amphibians have .... skin.

a) soft b) hard c) tough d) smooth

9 Fish take in oxygen through their ....

a) tail b) bills c) gills d) hills

10 Birds have ....

a) beaks b) leaves c) fur d) hair

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

eggs - lay - Amphibians - water - in - .

....

types - are - There - five - vertebrates - of - .

....

are - Mammals - warm-blooded - .

....

are - animals - Vertebrates - a backbone - with - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Guiding words:

(water - gills - cold-blooded - scales - fins)

....

....

....

....

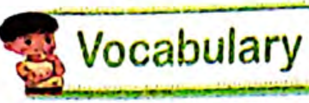
....

....

....



LANGUAGE



Vocabulary كلمات

enormous	ضخم	Earth	ب الأرض
tiny	صغير جدًا	natural world	م الطبيعي
the blue whale	الحوت الأزرق	African elephant	ل الأفريقي
whale shark	سمكة قرش الحوت	Asian elephant	ل الآسيوي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ostrich	نعامة	quiet	ى
leopard	فهد	rainforests	ت استوائية
scientist	عالِم	frog	فدع
chameleon	حرباء	anaconda	بان الأناكوندا
bee hummingbird	طائر طنان النحل	size	جم
discover	يكتشف	strong	وي
Cuba	دولة كوبا	sloth	ب الكسلان
Madagascar	دولة مدغشقر	howler monkey	رد العواء
Papua New Guinea	مدينة بابوا (غينيا)	narwhal	حريش البحر - كركدن البحر - الحوت ذو الناب
cheetah	الفهد الصياد		



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It can be up to 30 meters long.	قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر.
at just 30 mm long	بطول ٣٠ مليمتر فقط
extremely strong	قوي للغاية
the same size	نفس الحجم
on Earth	على الأرض
at about 12 meters long	بطول حوالي ١٢ متر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read about...

Size in the animal world الحجم في عالم الحيوان

Big and small

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones!
The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.

في عالم الطبيعة، يوجد حيوانات ضخمة وأخرى صغيرة جدًا.
أكبر حيوان على اليابسة من الثدييات وهو الفيل الأفريقي. الفيل الأفريقي أكبر من الفيل الآسيوي.



The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

أكبر حيوان في العالم هو أيضًا من الثدييات ولكن يعيش في البحر. إنه الحوت الأزرق ويمكن أن يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ مترًا. في الحقيقة أنهما أكبر الحيوانات التي عاشت على كوكب الأرض.

The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

سمكة القرش الحوت هي أكبر سمكة في العالم. إنها أصغر من الحوت الأزرق بطول حوالي ١٢ مترًا.



The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba.
The biggest bird is the ostrich. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

أصغر طائر هو طنان النحل والذي يبلغ طوله ٥,٥ سم. إنه يعيش في دولة كوبا.
إن أكبر طائر هو النعامة والتي يصل طولها إلى ٢,٥ مترًا ! طيور النعام أسرع من الفهود، لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران.



In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long!
But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

في عام ٢٠١٢، اكتشف العلماء حرباء صغيرة جدًا في دولة مدغشقر. يعتقد الناس أنها أصغر الزواحف في العالم حيث يبلغ طولها ٣٠ ملليمتر فقط. ولكن حتى ذلك هي أكبر من ضفدع في مدينة بابوا بغينيا الحديثة حيث يبلغ طوله ٧ ملليمتر لذا هو أصغر حيوان فقاري اكتشفناه.

Help your child read about sizes in the animal world.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن أحجام الحيوانات.



Comparative Adjectives
صفات المقارنة



Usage الاستخدام

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.**

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.



Form التكوين

adj صفة + er + than.

 faster than →  smaller than → 

e.g. The cheetah is faster than the ostrich.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.

Spelling rules

1 Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) إلى الصفة.

 nicer than → 

e.g. The fish is nicer than the ostrich.

Help your child use comparatives.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة المقارنة

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

 bigger than → 

e.g. The elephant is bigger than the ostrich.

3. Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول الحرف y إلى i ونضيف er.

 heavier than → 

e.g. The blue whale is heavier than the elephant.

Superlative Adjectives
صفات التفضيل

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.**

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة.

Form التكوين

the + adj صفة + est.

small → the smallest

e.g. The ant is the smallest.



Help your child use superlatives.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

Spelling rules

1 Adjectives that end in (-e), only add (-st).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (st-) فقط.

nice → the nicest

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the nicest.

2 Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3 Adjectives that end in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest sea animal.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... animal on land is a mammal.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small
2. The ostrich is faster .... the leopard.
   a) then b) than c) that d) those
3. The whale shark is the .... fish in the world.
   a) biggest b) bigger c) fat d) big
4. The chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a) big b) small c) smaller d) smallest

Help your child use superlatives.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة التفضيل.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The mouse is .... than the cat.
   a) small b) the smallest c) smallest d) smaller
2. The blue whale is .... than the whale shark.
   a) the biggest b) biggest c) big d) bigger
3. Ants are .... than humans.
   a) strong b) the strongest c) stronger d) strongest
4. The ostrich is .... than the bee hummingbird.
   a) big b) the biggest c) bigger d) biggest
5. The frog is smaller .... the cat.
   a) those b) then c) that d) than
6. Leopards aren't .... than ostriches.
   a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) the fastest
7. The ostrich is the .... bird.
   a) biggest b) the biggest c) bigger d) big
8. .... vertebrate is a frog in Papua New Gunea.
   a) Small b) The smallest c) Smaller d) The small
9. Leopards are .... than ostriches.
   a) slow b) the slowest c) slower d) slowest
10. The whale is .... than the shark.
    a) long b) the longest c) longest d) longer

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - bird - The ostrich - the world - the biggest - in - .

....

2. humans - stronger - Ants - than - are - .

....

3. biggest - The blue - is - whale - the - animal - .

....

4. the leopard - faster - The ostrich - is - than - .

....

3 Write correct sentences.

1. Leopards / be / large / than / cheetahs.

....

2. A bee hummingbird / be / small / bird / in the world.

....

3. Ants / be / strong / than / humans.

....

4 Read and match.

1. The whale shark is the	a. than the leopard.
2. The ostrich is faster	b. bigger than the Asian elephant.
3. The smallest bird is	c. biggest fish in the world.
4. The African elephant is	d. the bee hummingbird.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )



INVERTEBRATES



jellyfish
قنديل البحر



dragonfly
يعسوب



snail
حلزون



octopus
أخطبوط



squid
حبار



crab
سرطان البحر



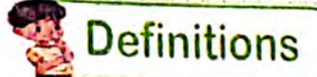
insects
حشرات



grasshopper
جرادة



spider
عنكبوت



Definitions تعريفات

Vertebrates	are animals with a backbone الفقاريات هي حيوانات لها عمود فقري.
Invertebrates	are animals without a backbone اللافقاريات هي حيوانات ليس لها عمود فقري.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

information	معلومات	enough	
shell	صَدَفة - قوقعة	amazing	
research	بحث	giant	. عملاق
sea star	نجمة البحر	atlas moth	عثة الأطلس
hard	صلب	arachnid	كبوتيات - فصيلة العناكب
protection	حماية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed
move	يتحرك	moved
call	ينادي - يسمي	called
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	finished
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
write	يكتب	wrote
find out	يكتشف	found out
choose	يختار	chose
fly	يطير	flew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out	يكتشف	up to	صل إلى
write about	يكتب عن	in water	في الماء
on the internet	على الإنترنت	on land	على اليابسة
more than	أكثر من	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة
well done	أحسنت	soft bodies	أجسام طرية

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

What does Sami find out?

ماذا يكتشف سامي؟

'Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!' said Sami sadly. I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose.'
'Why don't you write about invertebrates?' asked Sami's dad. 'More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates.'
'Good idea!' said Sami. 'Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?'
'Of course,' said Dad.
'Oh wow!' said Sami. I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.' 'Do you have enough information for your project?' laughed Dad.
'Oh yes!' said Sami. 'Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast.
Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter! Did you know that the spider is not an insect? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.
'Well done!' said Dad. 'Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please?'

قال سامي بحزن «يا أبي، أنا لا أعرف ماذا أكتب لمشروعي الدراسي! يجب أن أبحث عن بعض الحيوانات، لكن أنا لا أعرف أي الحيوانات أختار.» سأل والد سامي «لماذا لا تكتب عن اللافقريات؟ أكثر من ٩٠٪ من الحيوانات لافقريات». قال سامي «فكرة جيدة!» «هل يمكنني البحث على شبكة الإنترنت بسرعة لإيجاد المعلومات من فضلك؟» قال الأب «بالطبع». قال سامي «أوه، واو! لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات! اللافقريات من ذوات الدم البارد. يعيشون على الأرض وفي المياه. بعض اللافقريات مثل الكابوريا، لديها قوقعة صلبة للحماية. آخرون، مثل قنديل البحر، لديها أجسام طرية. بعض اللافقريات تستطيع السباحة بشكل جيد للغاية مثل الأخطبوط والحبار». ضحك الأب وقال «هل لديك معلومات كافية لمشروعك؟ قال سامي «أوه، نعم! انتظر، لقد وجدت المزيد من المعلومات! بعض اللافقريات مثل القواقع لديها أصداف صلبة و تتحرك ببطء شديد، الآخرين أسرع منها. يمكن أن يطير اليعسوب بسرعة كبيرة. الحشرات هي أيضًا من اللافقريات. لديهم ستة أرجل. أعتقد أن حشرة الجراد أكثر حشرة مذهلة. يمكنهم أن يقفزوا أكثر من مترا هل تعرف أن العنكبوت ليس حشرة. له ثمانية أرجل ويسمى عنكبوتي، يمكنه التحرك سريعًا جدًا.» قال الأب «أحسنت!» «هل انتهيت من البحث؟ هل يمكنني استعادة هاتفي المحمول الآن، من فضلك؟»

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb.
It comes after the verb.

ل كلمة تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. Snails move slowly.

Form التكوين

وين الظرف، نضيف (ly) إلى الصفة.

adj صفة + ly

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء | sad حزين → sadly بحزن

Note:

- If the adjective ends in (a consonant + y), change the "y" into "i" and add "ly".

تهت الصفة بحرف "y" مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، فإننا نستبدل الحرف "y" بـ "i" ثم نضيف "ly".

easy سهل → easily بسهولة

- Some adjectives are irregular.

ض الظروف غير منتظمة.

good جيد → well بشكل جيد | fast سريع → fast بسرعة

e.g. He swims very well.

e.g. He can run fast.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some invertebrates can swim very ....
   a) well b) bad c) good d) happy
2. Some invertebrates, such as snails, move very ....
   a) slow b) quick c) quickness d) slowly
3. Dragonflies can fly very ....
   a) quick b) fast c) slow d) good

Help your child use adverbs correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الظروف بطريقة صحيحة.

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Arachnids - backbones - cold-blooded - sea - soft - swim

Invertebrates don't have 1) .... They are 2) .... They live in the 3) .... and some live on land. Some have 4) .... bodies and some have hard shells. Some invertebrates can 5) .... and some can walk. 6) .... are not insects. They have 8 legs.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some invertebrates have a hard shell for ....
   a) project b) protection c) research d) life
2. The jellyfish are ....
   a) vertebrates b) invertebrates c) birds d) arachnids
3. Vertebrates are animals with a ....
   a) backbone b) eyes c) wing d) foot
4. .... are arachnids.
   a) Elephants b) Octopuses c) Snails d) Spiders
5. The squid can swim very ....
   a) slow b) quick c) bad d) fast
6. Some invertebrates move very .... , like snails.
   a) quick b) long c) slow d) slowly
7. The spider can move very ....
   a) good b) slow c) quick d) quickly

8. "I'm sorry." My brother said ....

a) sad b) happy c) sadly d) bad

9. I speak English ....

a) good b) bad c) slow d) well

10. Jellyfish have .... bodies.

a) hard b) fast c) soft d) slow

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates. They are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates have hard shells. Others have soft bodies. Octopuses and squids can swim very fast. Snails can swim slowly. Dragonflies fly very well. Grasshoppers can jump high. Spiders can move quickly.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) invertebrates b) fish c) birds d) vertebrates

2. About .... of animals are invertebrates.

a) 60% b) 90% c) 80% d) 70%

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do invertebrates live? ....

4. Which invertebrates can fly? ....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words

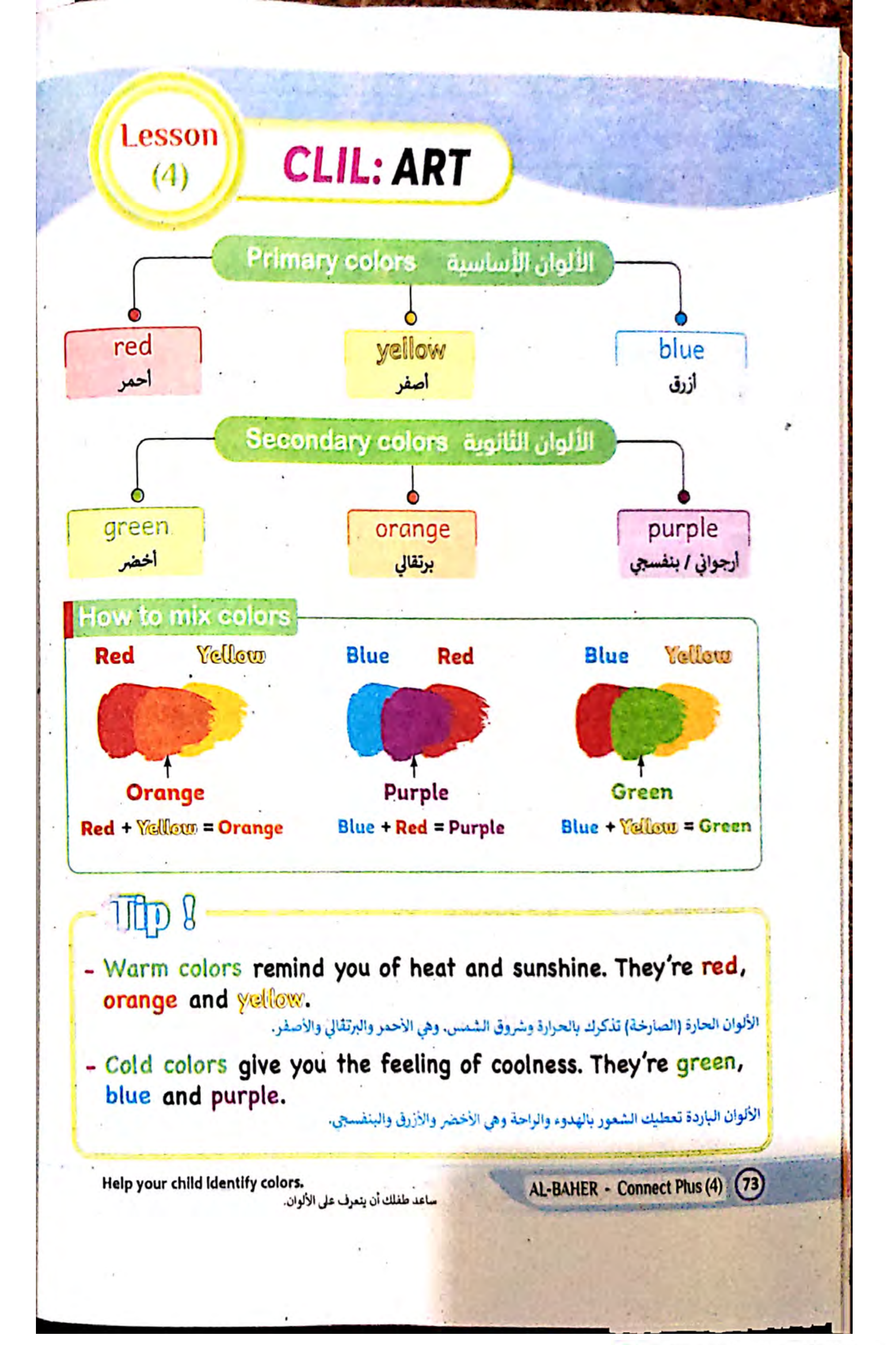
"Invertebrates"

Guiding words:

(backbone - cold-blooded - land - water)

....

....



Lesson (4) CLIL: ART

Primary colors الألوان الأساسية

- red أحمر
- yellow أصفر
- blue أزرق

Secondary colors الألوان الثانوية

- green أخضر
- orange برتقالي
- purple أرجواني / بنفسجي

How to mix colors

Red + Yellow = Orange

Blue + Red = Purple

Blue + Yellow = Green

Tip !

- Warm colors remind you of heat and sunshine. They're red, orange and yellow.

  الألوان الحارة (الصارخة) تذكرك بالحرارة وشروق الشمس، وهي الأحمر والبرتقالي والأصفر.

- Cold colors give you the feeling of coolness. They're green, blue and purple.

  الألوان الباردة تعطيك الشعور بالهدوء والراحة وهي الأخضر والأزرق والبنفسجي.

Help your child identify colors.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الألوان.

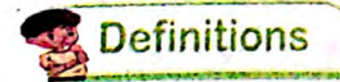


Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

dark colors	الألوان الغامقة (الداكنة)	shade	درجة (اللون)
light colors	الألوان الفاتحة	prey	فريسة
warm colors	الألوان الحارة	predator	حيوان مُفترس
cold colors	الألوان الباردة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
bright colors	الألوان البرّاقة (اللامعة)	poisonous	سام
types	أنواع	warning	تحذير
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	interesting	شيق - ممتع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
mix	يخلط	mixed	make	يصنع	made
carry	يحمل	carried	eat	يأكل	ate
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	catch	يمسك - يصطاد	caught
attract	يجذب	attracted	hide	يختبئ	hid
reproduce	يتكاثر	reproduced	be	يكون	was - were



Definitions تعريفات

predator مفترس	the animal that hunts and eats other animals هو الحيوان الذي يقوم باصطياد وأكل الحيوانات الأخرى
prey فريسة	the animal that is caught and eaten هو الحيوان الذي يتم صيده وأكله

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look, read and answer.

Why do flowers have bright colors?

لماذا تحتوي الزهور على ألوان زاهية؟



Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

يعتقد العلماء أن هناك ما يقرب من ٤٠٠ ألف نوع من النباتات معظمها يحتوي على أزهار لها ألوان عديدة ومختلفة. تجذب الأزهار زاهية اللون الحشرات التي تقوم بنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى أخرى. وهذا يساعد الزهور على التكاثر.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

الألوان الأساسية هي الأحمر، والأصفر والأزرق، لا يمكننا صنع هذه الألوان بمزج ألوان أخرى. نكوّن ألوانًا ثانوية عن طريقة مزج الألوان الأساسية الثلاثة بكميات مختلفة. يمكننا تكوين اللون الأخضر والبرتقالي والبنفسجي وكل الدرجات بينها. على سبيل المثال يمكننا أن نخلط الأحمر والأصفر لتكوين البرتقالي. الألوان الثانوية يمكن تكوينها عن طريق خلط الألوان الأساسية القريبة منها على عجلة الألوان. إضافة الأسود إلى أي لون يجعله داكنًا وإضافة الأبيض يجعله فاتحًا.

Answer the following questions.

1 What are the primary colors?

....

2 How can we make secondary colors?

....

3 How do you make colors darker?

....

Look, read and answer.



There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish.
In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك أن تراها تحت سطح البحر! فبعض الأسماك لها ألوان زاهية جدًا وكذلك بعض النباتات. فالشعاب المرجانية ذات الألوان الزاهية يمكن أن تساعد الأسماك في الاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة. فالمرجان لامع جدًا وله ألوان مختلفة لذلك يمكن للأسماك الاختباء من الأسماك الأكبر حجمًا. بالإضافة إلى أن العديد من الحيوانات المفترسة لا تأكل الفرائس ذات الألوان الزاهية. ويمكن أن تكون الألوان الزاهية تحذيرًا من أن ذلك الحيوان سام.

Choose the correct answer.

1 A (prey - predator) is an animal that is caught and eaten.

2 A (predator - prey) is an animal that hunts and eats other animals.

Help your child read and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يجيب.



Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. .... colors are red, yellow and blue.
2. We make .... colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts.
3. We can mix red and yellow to make ....
4. Adding black to a color makes it ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We mix red and .... to make orange.
   a) blue b) yellow c) green d) purple
2. .... is a primary color.
   a) Red b) Purple c) Green d) Orange
3. .... is a secondary color.
   a) Green b) Red c) Yellow d) Blue
4. Adding .... to a color makes it lighter.
   a) black b) blue c) white d) red
5. Adding black to a color makes it ....
   a) colder b) lighter c) smaller d) darker

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. coral - very - The - is - reef - bright - .

....

2. poisonous - are - Some - animals - .

....

3 yellow - make - Red - and - orange - .

....

4 and - eat - Predators - preys - catch - .

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea. Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.



- WRITING
- PROJECT



Vocabulary كلمات

water lily	الزنبق المائي	macro-habitat	(بيئة - موطن) كبير
disadvantages	عيوب	micro-habitat	(بيئة - موطن) صغير
advantages	ميزات	echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

soil	تربة زراعية	lake	بحيرة
bottom	قاع	surface	سطح
area	مساحة	stem	ساق نبات
roots	جذور	flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — **Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cover	يغطي	covered	make	يصنع - يجعل	made
pollinate	يلقح	pollinated	grow	ينمو	grew
reach	يصل إلى	reached	spread	ينتشر	spread



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

reach down to	يصل لأسفل إلى	look pretty	يبدو جميلًا
make it difficult for	يجعلها صعبة لـ	on the top of	على قمة
on the surface of the ...	على سطح ...	on the bottom of	في قاع

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Writing Tip !

Linking words & phrases

You can use these words/phrases to link the sentences and ideas in your paragraph:

يمكنك أن تستخدم هذه الكلمات / العبارات لربط الجمل والأفكار في فقرتك :

In addition: to add more information to the same idea.

(بالإضافة لذلك) لإضافة معلومات أكثر إلى نفس الفكرة

However: to show a change in the topic

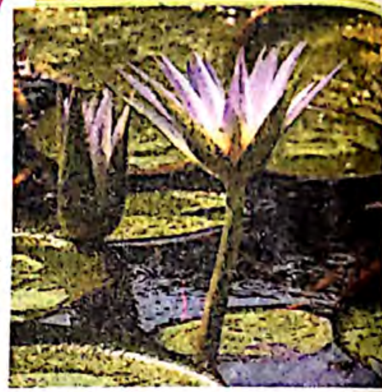
(مع ذلك) لعرض تغيير في الموضوع

On one hand .. On the other hand: these can show two different points of view on the same topic

(من ناحية ... من ناحية أخرى) يمكن أن توضح وجهتي نظر مختلفتين في نفس الموضوع

Look and read.

The water lily



Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. On one hand, this can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

تنمو أغلب النباتات في التربة. ومع ذلك تنمو بعض النباتات في الماء مثل زنبق الماء. فهو لديه ورقة شجر عريضة مسطحة على سطح الماء وساق طويلة تصل إلى قاع البحيرة. و لها زهور ألوانها زاهية و تنتج بذورًا تطفو على سطح الماء. بالإضافة إلى أن جذورها تنتشر تحت الماء ويمكنها أن تغطي مساحة كبيرة من الماء. من ناحية. يمكن أن يبدو هذا جميلًا، ولكن من ناحية أخرى، يمكن أن تسبب صعوبة للحيوانات والنباتات الأخرى للعيش تحت الماء.

Help your child write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

However - In addition - On one hand - On the other hand

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. 1) .... , bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They sleep during the day and hunts for food at night. They can fly very fast at night because they can "see" using a special skill called echolocation. 2) .... bats are helpful to humans and the environment. 3) ...., large numbers of bats can be noisy and messy. 4) ...., they are helpful to farmers because they pollinate plants and eat large amounts of harmful insects.

Read these contrasting ideas about zoos.

Advantages	Disadvantages
zoos protect endangered animals	animals are kept in the "wrong" habitats
zookeepers love the animals	animals are seperated from their family groups
zoos are places of scientific research	animals aren't free to live a natural life
people can see and learn about wild animals	animals can become stressed and unhappy

Help your child read about zoos.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن حدائق الحيوان.

Unit (2)

Look and read.



- In this unit you have learned about lot of plants and animals. When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.
- Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands.
- A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

.في هذه الوحدة تعلمت عن الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات. عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعي، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش سويًا في بيئة طبيعية. الفقاريات و اللافقريات والنباتات جميعهم يحتاجون بعضهم البعض ويعملون سويًا للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

.البيئات الكبيرة هي الغابات والصحاري والمناطق العشبية.

.البيئة الصغيرة هي منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.

Large-habitats	Micro-habitat
forests	a pond
deserts	a tree
grasslands	

Read and learn.

Animals and plants that live in the micro-habitats.

pond بركة		cave كهف		tree شجرة	
dragonfly	حشرة اليعسوب	bat	خفاش	butterfly	فراشة
fish	سمك	snake	ثعبان	monkey	قرد
frog	ضفدع	lizard	سحلية	bird	طائر
snail	حلزون	spider	عنكبوت	squirrel	سنجاب
water lily	زنبق الماء				
crab	كابوريا				

Help your child look and read. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Most mammals live on ....

   a) forest b) land c) river d) lake

2. .... love the animals.

   a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Zookeepers d) Footballers

3. .... are mammals.

   a) Birds b) Bats c) Fish d) Snakes

4. Zoos protect .... animals.

   a) free b) danger c) endangered d) sad

5. Plants grow in ....

   a) air b) soil c) floor d) dust

6. Dragonflies live in a ....

   a) pond b) tree c) cave d) sea

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

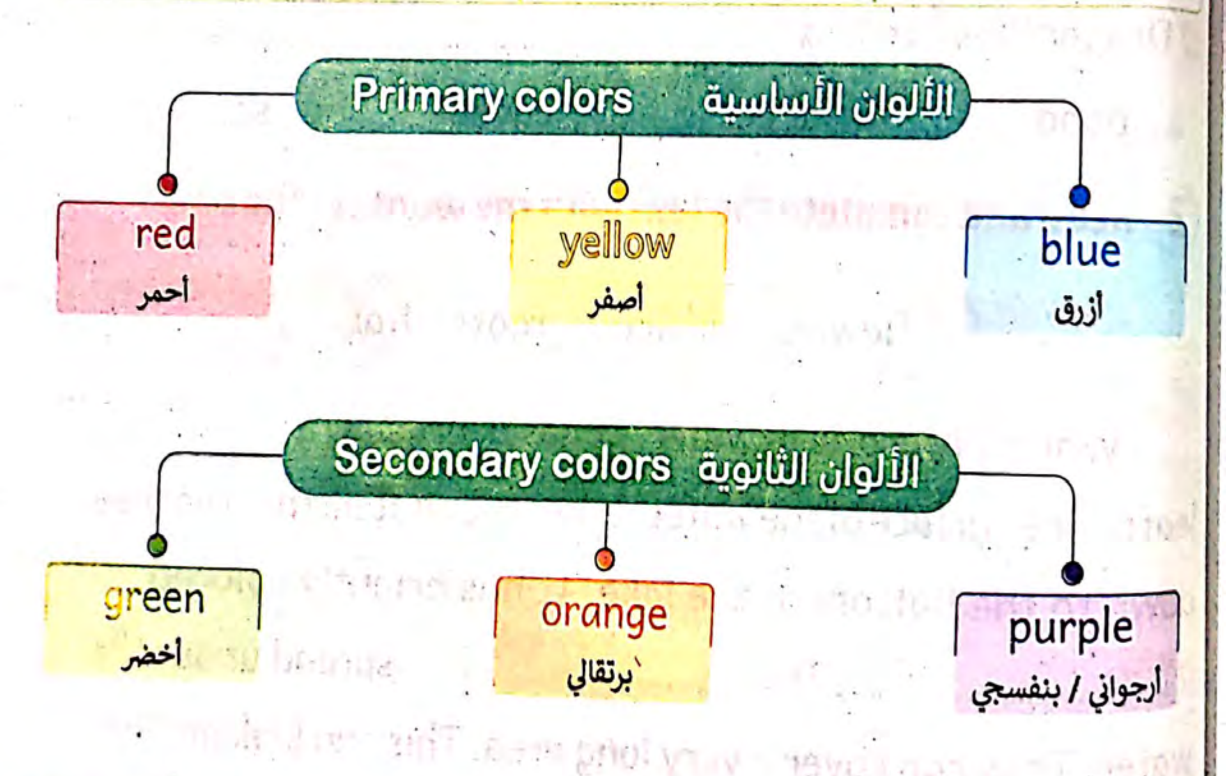
flowers - difficult - roots - flat

Water lily grows in water. It has a large, 1) .... leaf on the surface of the water. It has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored 2) .... Its 3) .... spread under the water. They can cover a very long area. This can look pretty.

Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

Vertebrates	الفقاريات	grasshopper	جرادة	habitat	بيئة / موطن
Invertebrates	اللافقاريات	reptiles	الزواحف	bird	طائر
amphibians	البرمائيات	bat	خفاش	fin	زعنفة
mammals	الثدييات	ostrich	نعامة	scales	قشور - حراشف
beak	منقار	gills	خياشيم	frightened	خائف
fur	فرو	loudly	بصوتٍ عالٍ	dragonfly	يعسوب
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	octopus	أخطبوط	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	snail	حلزون	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
crab	سرطان البحر / كابوريا	squid	حبار	leopard	فهد



Help your child review Unit (2).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية.



Comparative Adjectives

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster than

e.g. The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.

Superlative Adjectives

the + adj صفة + est

big → the biggest

small → the smallest

e.g. The blue whale is the biggest sea animal.

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the smallest bird.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل، وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. He runs fast.

Form التكوين adj صفة + ly

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء

quick سريع → quickly بسرعة

sad حزين → sadly بحزن

good جيد → well جيدًا

fast سريع → fast بسرعة



Help your child review Unit (2).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية.



Reptiles

Reptiles are cold-blooded, so they spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. They live on land or rivers.

Fish

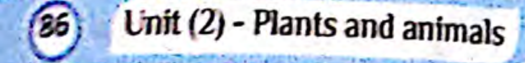
Fish live in water. They use their gills to take in oxygen. They can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They use their fins to move.

Insects

Insects are invertebrates. They have six legs. The grasshoppers are very amazing insects. Some insects can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has 8 legs and is called arachnid.

Birds

Birds are warm-blooded vertebrates. They don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers. In addition, they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly. However, there are some birds that can't fly such as the ostrich.



Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.



Activities on Unit (2)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Coral reefs help fish to ....
   a) sleep b) hide c) stay d) lay
2. The coral is very .... and has different colors.
   a) bright b) light c) black d) dark
3. .... don't eat preys that are brightly colored.
   a) Hunters b) Lions c) Fish d) Predators
4. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is ....
   a) poisonous b) good c) friendly d) nice

2 Listen and complete.

1. Reproduce: Reptiles are .... - blooded.
2. Reptiles have to spend time in the .... to keep warm.
3. Reptiles have .... legs.
4. Reptiles come onto land to .... their eggs.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

backbone - types - animals - invertebrates

Ahmed is reading a book about animals.

Omar : What are you doing today?

Ahmed : I'm reading a book about .... (1) ....

Omar : What .... (2) .... of animals are there?

Ahmed : There are vertebrates and .... (3) ....

Omar : What are vertebrates ?

Ahmed : They're animals with a .... (4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fish can take in oxygen through their ....

a) mouth b) nose c) head d) gills

2. Red, blue and yellow are .... colors.

a) primary b) secondary c) first d) second

3. The elephant is .... than the monkey.

a) the biggest b) big c) bigger d) biggest

4. The blue whale is the .... sea animal.

a) small b) big c) bigger d) biggest

5. The octopus can swim ....

a) easy b) quick c) slow d) quickly

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they ...

6 The Reader

A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the tent makers. ( )



2. Zeinab and her grandmother visited the shop. ( )

B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Grandpa is a/an ....
   a) teacher   b) doctor   c) artisan   d) carpenter
4. Zeinab loves the big picture with all the ....
   a) insects   b) flowers   c) birds   d) fish

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the - The ostrich - leopard - than - faster - is - .

....

2. reptiles - legs - Most - four - have - .

....

3. well - swim - The octopus - very - can - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

(Insects)

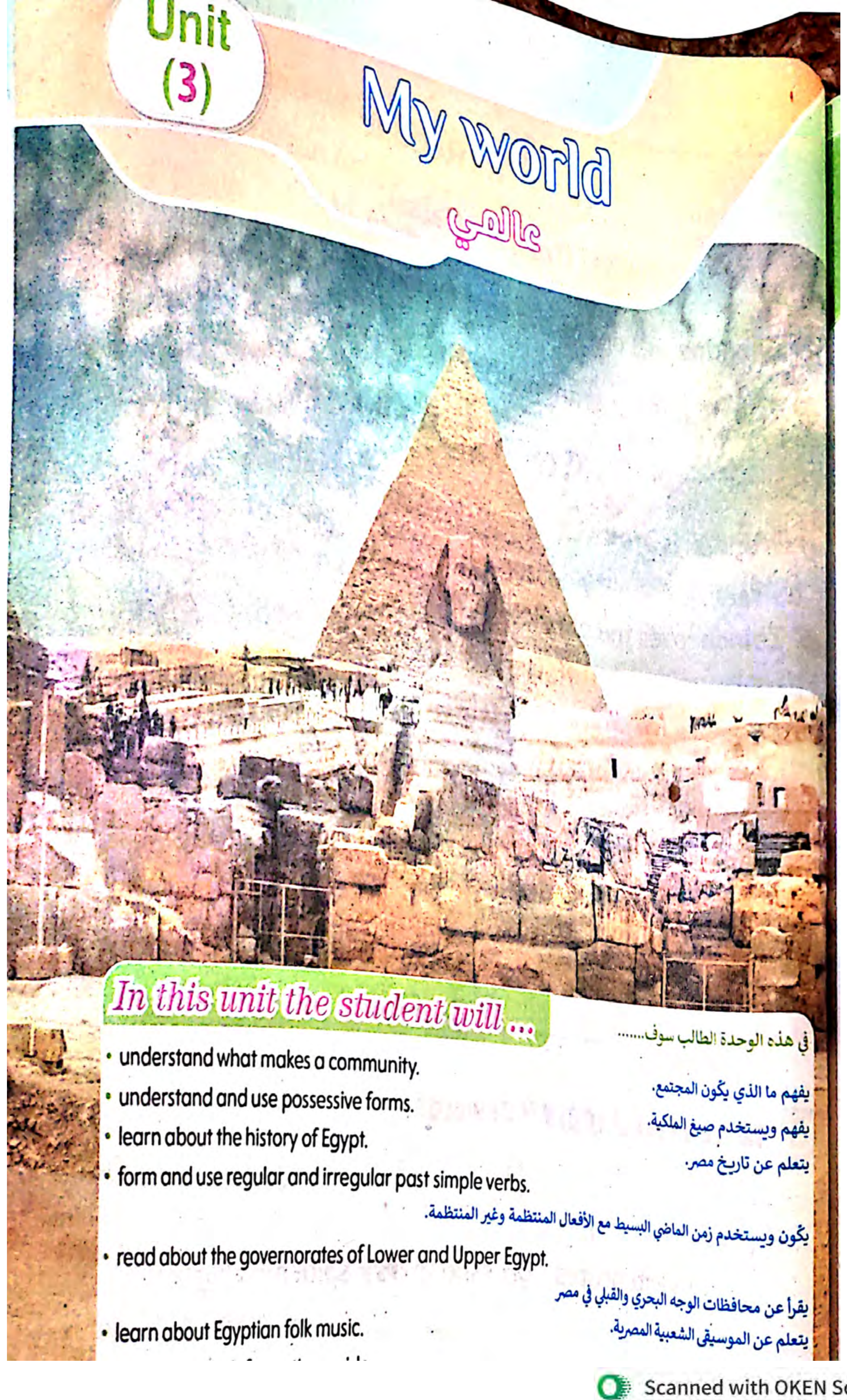
Guiding words:

(invertebrates - grasshoppers - spider - 8 legs)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Unit (3)

My world
عالمي

In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- understand what makes a community.
  يفهم ما الذي يكّون المجتمع.
- understand and use possessive forms.
  يفهم ويستخدم صيغ الملكية.
- learn about the history of Egypt.
  يتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs.
  يكّون ويستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.
- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt.
  يقرأ عن محافظات الوجه البحري والقبلي في مصر
- learn about Egyptian folk music.
  يتعلم عن الموسيقى الشعبية المصرية.



MY COMMUNITY



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

community	مجتمع	sports club	نادي رياضي
neighborhood	حي سكني	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	environment	البيئة



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

together	معًا	group	مجموعة	helpful	متعاون
clothes	ملابس	street	شارع	fair way	طريقة عادلة
activities	أنشطة	tourists	سائحون	shop	محل (متجر صغير)
mixture	خليط	ideas	أفكار	civilization	حضارة
village	قرية	weather	الطقس	polite	مهذب - مؤدب
society	المجتمع	kind	عطوف		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يؤمن	believed	act	يؤدي	acted
share	يشارك	shared	include	يشمل	included

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think يعتقد - يفكر	thought	mean يعني / يقصد	meant

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the same area في نفس المنطقة	drop trash في القمامة
more than أكثر من	look after ني بـ
close to بالقرب من	What is special about..? المميز بخصوص...؟
for me بالنسبة لي	work hard ل بجد
act in a way يتصرف بطريقة	from different parts of أجزاء مختلفة من
part of جزء من	good for يد لـ

Definitions التعريفات

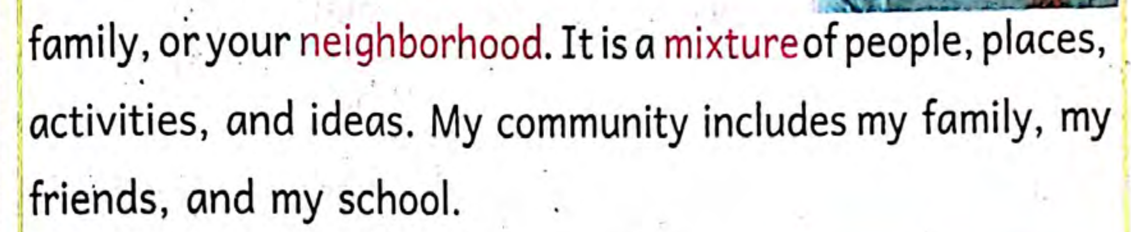
community المجتمع	a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معًا في نفس المنطقة ويتشاركون الأنشطة والأفكار.
neighborhood الحي السكني	the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live الشوارع والمنازل والمحلات والمدارس القريبة من مكان سكنك.
citizenship المواطنة	behaving in a way that helps your society التصرف بطريقة تساعد بها مجتمعك.
activities أنشطة	the things you can do الأشياء التي تستطيع القيام بها
ideas أفكار	the things you think about and believe in الأشياء التي تعتقد وتؤمن بها

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read about Habiba's community.

My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.
A community is more than your house,



family, or your neighborhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.



There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too.
When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way.
Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community. I am always polite and helpful at school, and at my sports club.

المجتمع هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون ويعملون سويًا في نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو أكثر من منزلك، أو عائلتك أو الحي السكني الخاص بك. إنه مزيج من الأشخاص والأماكن والأنشطة والأفكار. مجتمعي يشمل عائلتي و أصدقائي ومدرستي. وهناك على الأرجح أماكن مهمة في مدينتك أو قريتك غالبًا ما تزورها. يمكن أن يكون لديك مجتمع هناك. بالنسبة لي، أنا جزء من المجتمع في النادي الرياضي الخاص بي أيضًا. فعندما تتصرف بطريقة مفيدة لمجتمعك فهذه مواطنة جيدة. وهذا يعني أنك تعمل بجد لتساعد الأشخاص الآخرون وتتصرف بطريقة لطيفة وعادلة. إن المواطنة الصالحة جزء جيد من كونك في مجتمع. أنا دائمًا مهذبة ومتعاونة في المدرسة وفي النادي الرياضي الخاص بي.

Help your child understand what makes a community.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم مما يتكون المجتمع.

Language

Possessive forms صيغ الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his	+ noun	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	+ noun	hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير عاقل	its	+ noun	----	
We	نحن	our	+ noun	ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your	+ noun	yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their	+ noun	theirs	ملكهم

e.g.

- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- These are your keys. = These keys are yours.
- This is my neighborhood. It's mine.
- This is our school. It's ours.
- This is my cousins' house. It's theirs.
- Those are Rasha's books. They're hers.
- That is your bike. It's yours.
- These are Adam's shoes. They're his.

Help your child understand and use possessive forms.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويستخدم أشكال التعبير عن الملكية.

1 صفات الملكية يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك

e.g. This is my car.

2 ضمائر الملكية لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وغالبًا ما تأتي في نهاية الجملة

e.g. That juice is mine! It isn't yours.

e.g. This is my shoes. It's mine.

3 يمكن استخدام ('s) الملكية:

الشيء المملوك + 's + اسم مفرد

e.g. Adam's shoes.

الشيء المملوك + s' + اسم جمع

e.g. My cousins' house.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This my book. It's ....
   a) his b) hers c) mine d) yours
2. These are Omar's shoes. They are ....
   a) its b) ours c) his d) hers
3. That is .... bike. It's hers.
   a) our b) his c) her d) their
4. My car is red, but .... is white.
   a) his b) her c) our d) its
5. Those are our glasses. They are ....
   a) his b) hers c) ours d) its

2 Read and complete with Possessive pronouns.

1. They're Aya's running shoes. They're ....
2. They're Adam's neighbors. They're..
3. It's my community. It's ....
4. It's your house. It's ....



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The girls at my running club are my ....
   a) community b) neighborhood c) students d) citizenship
2. We are all from different parts of ....
   a) town b) country c) village d) city
3. We have lots of friends and families in our ....
   a) farm b) neighborhood c) zoo d) park
4. I think good .... is about looking after where you live.
   a) citizenship b) neighborhood c) farming d) community

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Behaving in a way that helps your society is called ....
   a) community b) neighborhood c) playing d) citizenship
2. The things you think and believe in are called ....
   a) activities b) hobbies c) games d) ideas
3. I am always .... My parents love me.
   a) fast b) noisy c) polite d) bad
4. This is my neighborhood. It's ....
   a) his b) her c) mine d) its
5. This is her skirt. It's ....
   a) his b) theirs c) yours d) hers
6. These are our bikes. They are ....
   a) ours b) theirs c) his d) hers

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

This is my brother's pencil. It's ....

a) hers b) his c) yours d) theirs

That's their car. It's ....

a) his b) ours c) theirs d) hers

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. A community is a mixture of people, places and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club, too.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

The text is about ....

a) neighborhood b) community c) citizenship d) sport

My community includes my family, friends and ....

a) club b) school c) zoo d) farm

B) Answer the following questions.

What is a community? ....

Where can we have a community? ....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

(Your community)

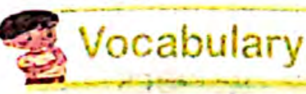
Guiding words:

(people - places - activities - ideas)

....



THE HISTORY OF EGYPT



Vocabulary كلمات

history	التاريخ	country	بلد
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	boats	مراكب / قوارب
pharaoh	فرعون	kingdom	مملكة
long history	تاريخ عريق	symbols	رموز
north	الشمال	scribe	كاتب
south	الجنوب	area	مساحة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	desert	صحراء
hieroglyphic	هيروغليفي	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي
powerful	قوي	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري
interesting	شيّق - ممتع	separate areas	مناطق منفصلة
mixture	خليط	ruling dynasties	سلالات حاكمة
BCE	قبل الميلاد	papyrus	ورق البردي
tombs	مقابر	papyrus reeds	عيدان نبات البردي
signs	علامات		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
separate	يفصل	separated
join	يلتقي / يتصل بـ	joined
unite	يوحد	united
sail	يبحر	sailed
rule	يحكم	ruled
control	يتحكم / يسيطر	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
build	يبني	built
mean	يعني	meant
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
spend	يقضي	spent
write	يكتب	wrote
become	يصبح	became

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

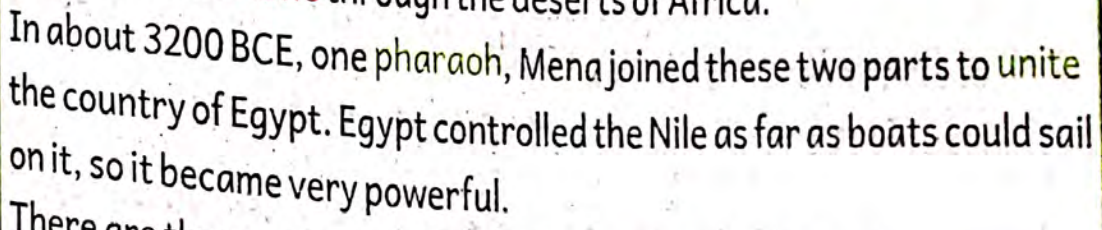
write down	يدون / يسجل	write in hieroglyphs	يكتب باللغة الهيروغليفية
work for	يعمل لدى	At first	في البداية
write on stone	يكتب على الحجر	as far as	حتى - بقدر ما
flow throw	يمر - يتدفق من خلال	made from	مصنوع من

Read about the history of Egypt.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

There are three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt:



Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

مصر دولة ذات تاريخ عريق ومثير للاهتمام للغاية. بدأ الناس العيش بالقرب من النيل منذ حوالي ٩,٠٠٠ عام، في عام ٧٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد. في البداية، كان هناك منطقتان منفصلتان، هي مصر السفلى وكانت في الشمال حيث يلتقي النيل مع البحر. وصعيد مصر في الجنوب، حيث يتدفق النيل عبر صحاري أفريقيا. في حوال عام ٣٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد، ربط أحد الفراعنة ويدعى مينا الجزئين لتوحيد دولة مصر. كانت مصر تتحكم في نهر النيل بقدر ما كانت القوارب تبحر فيه، لذلك أصبحت ذات نفوذ قوى.

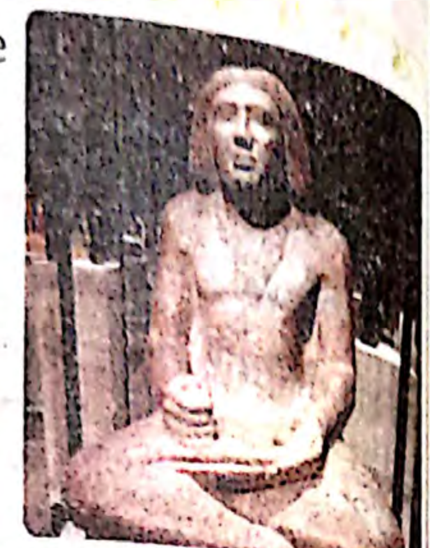
يوجد ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية لتاريخ مصر القديمة:

١- المملكة القديمة من ٢٨٠٠ إلى ٢٢٠٠ ق.م ٢- المملكة الوسطى من ٢٠٦٥ إلى ١٧٧٥ ق.م ٣- المملكة الحديثة من ١٥٧٠ إلى ١٠٩٨ ق.م

سيطرت سلالات حاكمة هامة على مصر لسنوات عديدة. هذه العائلات الهامة هم من حكموا البلاد.

Help your child learn about t...

Read and learn.



How do we know so much about the history of Egypt? Egyptians at that time used **scribes** to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties.

They wrote in **hieroglyphs**, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learned to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

كيف لنا أن نعرف الكثير عن تاريخ مصر؟ استخدم المصريون في ذلك الوقت الكتبة ليدونوا كل شيء حدث. كان الكتبة أشخاصًا مهمين للغاية. كانوا يعملون لدى الأسر الحاكمة. كانوا يكتبون بالهيروغليفية والتي كانت عبارة عن صور أو رموز تعني كلمة واحدة أو عدة أفكار. يمكننا أن نرى الكتابة الهيروغليفية اليوم في المقابر والمتاحف. تعلم الأطفال ليصبحوا كتبة في المدرسة. كان الكتبة يكتبون على الأحجار وعلى الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردي.



Did you know?

- The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648-2627 BCE.
- There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

• هرم زوسر هو أقدم هرم في العالم. بدأ الناس بناءه حوالي عام ٢٦٤٨ - ٢٦٢٧ قبل الميلاد.

• هناك أكثر من ٧٠٠ رمز هيروغليفي.



Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form: التكوين

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة — يضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

like → liked | join → joined | study → studied

Spelling rules

1. Verbs end in (e), add only (d).

rule → ruled | move → moved | use → used

2. Verbs end in (y) preceded by a consonant, omit (y) then add (ied)

try → tried | study → studied | cry → cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة — ليس لها شكل محدد وتحفظ

write → wrote | is → was | make → made

Usage: الاستخدام

We use past simple tense to express actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. They wrote in hieroglyphs.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس	last (week, month ,...) (الأسبوع / الشهر) الماضي
فترة زمنية + ago منذ	in + تاريخ ماضي (in 2010)

Help your child form and use past simple verbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكون ويستخدم الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... to the club yesterday.
   a) go b) went c) goes d) going
2. They .... in hieroglyphs in ancient Egypt.
   a) write b) writing c) wrote d) writes
3. Children .... to become scribes at school.
   a) to learn b) learns c) learning d) learned
4. Scribes .... very important people.
   a) were b) was c) are d) have
5. I .... at school yesterday.
   a) am b) was c) are d) were
6. Last week, children .... English.
   a) study b) studied c) studies d) will study

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt 1) .... (learn) to read ans write. This 2) .... (be) a job for scribes. Scribes 3) .... (be) very important people in society. To become a scribe, children 4) .... (go) to a special school. Here they 5) .... (study) hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts. The children 6) .... (have) to learn lots of different signs and symbols. They 7) .... (spend) all day copying the signs onto stone or papyrus paper. Scribes 8) .... (write) with reed brushes and ink. They 9) .... (make) ink from brightly colored minerals which they 10) .... (mix) with liquid. It 11) .... (take) four or five years to finish their education at scribe school.

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and ....
   a) play b) point c) write d) listen
2. This was a job for ....
   a) scribes b) architect c) doctors d) farmers
3. To become a scribe, children went to a .... school.
   a) secret b) private c) public d) special
4. The children had to learn lots of different signs and ....
   a) symbols b) examples c) rules d) subjects

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

three - history - Upper - ancient

Mona : Did you learn about the .... (1) .... of Egypt?
Sara : Yes, I did.
Mona : How many parts of the history of .... (2) .... Egypt are there?
Sara : There are .... (3) .... main parts of the history.
Mona : Where was .... (4) .... Egypt?
Sara : It was in the south.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Egypt is a country with a very .... and interesting history.
   a) short b) tall c) long d) small
2. .... Egypt is in the north.
   a) Lower b) Upper c) Down d) Higher

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. Upper Egypt was in the ....

a) earth b) south c) west d) north

4. There are .... main parts of the history of ancient Egypt.

a) 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4

5. Mena joined the two parts to .... the country of Egypt.

a) separate b) unite c) connect d) subject

6. Egyptians used ...... to write down everything that happened.

a) rulers b) scribes c) teachers d) doctors

7. The Ancient Egyptians wrote in ....

a) Arabic b) hieroglyphs c) English d) French

8. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago.

a) start b) started c) starts d) starting

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. Egypt has a long and interesting ....

a) math b) Arabic c) history d) story

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

The Nile flows through the deserts of..................

a) Asia   b) China   c) Africa   d) Europe

B} Answer the following questions.

When did people start to live near the Nile?

....

Who united the two parts of Egypt?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

Lower - was - Where - Egypt - ?

....

Egypt - Upper - was - south - in the - .

....

Egyptians - hieroglyphs - The ancient - in - wrote - .

....

to become - Children - at school - a scribe - learned - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

The history of Egypt

Guiding words:

(history - the Nile - Lower - Upper - joined)

....

....



THE GOVERNORATES OF EGYPT

Vocabulary كلمات

governorate	محافظة	large cities	مدن كبرى
the countryside	الريف	How big ....?	كم الحجم ....؟
region	منطقة	Which ...?	أيهما ...؟
the High Dam	السد العالي	port	ميناء
oasis	واحة	population	عدد السكان
farthest	الأبعد	natural features	السمات الطبيعية
water sports	رياضات مائية	Desert governorates	المحافظات الصحراوية
capital city	العاصمة	popular	محبوب / مشهور
map	خريطة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
sail	يبحر	sailed
finish	ينهي	finished
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
have / has	يملك	had



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى	find places on the map	يجد أماكن على الخريطة
sail in	يبحر داخل	sail out of	يبحر خارج
next to	بجانب	lots of = a lot of	الكثير من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

The Governorates of Egypt

There are 27 governorates in Egypt today. Look at the map. Where do you live?

يوجد سبعة وعشرون محافظة في مصر اليوم. انظر إلى الخريطة. أين تعيش؟



Lower Egypt governorates محافظات الوجه البحري

Kafr El Sheikh	كفر الشيخ	Monufia	المنوفية	Port Said	بورسعيد
Dakahlia	الدقهلية	Ismalia	الإسماعيلية	Cairo	القاهرة
Damietta	دمياط	Qalyubia	القليوبية	Beheira	البحيرة
Gharbia	الغربية	Suez	السويس	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Sharqia	الشرقية				

Upper Egypt governorates محافظات الوجه القبلي

Giza	الجيزة	Minya	المنيا	Qena	قنا
Faiyum	الفيوم	Asyut	أسيوط	Luxor	الأقصر
Beni Suef	بني سويف	Sohag	سوهاج	Aswan	أسوان

Desert governorates المحافظات الصحراوية

Matruh	مطروح	North Sinai	شمال سيناء
New Valley	الوادي الجديد	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
Red Sea	البحر الأحمر		

Help your child identify the governorates of Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على محافظات مصر.

Fares





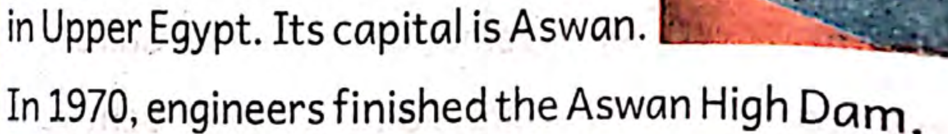
I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

أنا فارس، وأعيش في محافظة البحر الأحمر. إن بها شاطئ يبلغ طوله ١,٠٠٠ كم. إنه مكان مشهور جدا للزيارة من أجل رياضة الغوص تحت الماء والرياضات المائية.

Nadia



I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan.



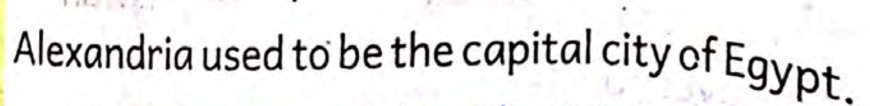
In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

أنا نادية، وأعيش في محافظة أسوان. إنها الأبعد في جنوب صعيد مصر وعاصمتها مدينة أسوان. في عام ١٩٧٠، أنهى المهندسون بناء السد العالي في أسوان.

Ibrahim



I'm Ibrahim, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of



Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

أنا إبراهيم، وأعيش في محافظة الإسكندرية. إنها محافظة هامة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر إلى داخل وخارج الميناء. كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر في الماضي.



Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.



تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ibrahim lives in the .... Governorate.
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Alexandria
2. Alexandria is ....
   a) important b) busy c) ugly d) dangerous
3. Ships sail in and out of the ....
   a) oasis b) river c) sea d) port
4. The city of Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt .
   a) capital b) countryside c) village d) town

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

245,000 - 440,098 km² - capital - oasis - population

New Valley Governerate is 1) .... in size. It is a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big 2) .... The population is about 3) .... The 4) .... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an 5) .... town in the south of this region.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A governorate has ....
   a) countryside b) large cities
   c) cities and countryside d) town
2. The High Dam is in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Aswan d) Damietta

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. There are .... governorates in Egypt.

a) 10 b) 20 c) 27 d) 26

4. Damietta Governorate is in .... Egypt.

a) Upper b) Lower c) Low d) High

5. The Red Sea Governorate has a .... which is over 1,000 km.

a) river b) lake c) beach d) bank

6. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High ....

a) School b) Park c) Dam d) Zoo

7. Alexandria used to be the capital .... of Egypt.

a) countryside b) village c) city d) town

8. You can visit the Red Sea for scuba ....

a) playing b) diving c) jumping d) swimming

9. Alexandria is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the ....

a) sort b) port c) court d) part

10. Aswan is the farthest .... in Upper Egypt.

a) east b) south c) west d) north

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. governorates - 27 - There - Egypt - are - in - .

....

2. biggest - New Valley - the - governorate - is - .

....

3. people - Cairo - How many - live - in - Governorate - ?

....

4. Governorate - square - Damietta - 1200 - is - kilometers - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports. My friend, Nadia lives in Aswan Governorate. It is the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .... Governorate.
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Red Sea d) Giza
2. .... finished the Aswan High Dam in 1970.
   a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Doctors d) Tourists

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Nadia live?

   ....

4. What does the Red Sea Governorate have?

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

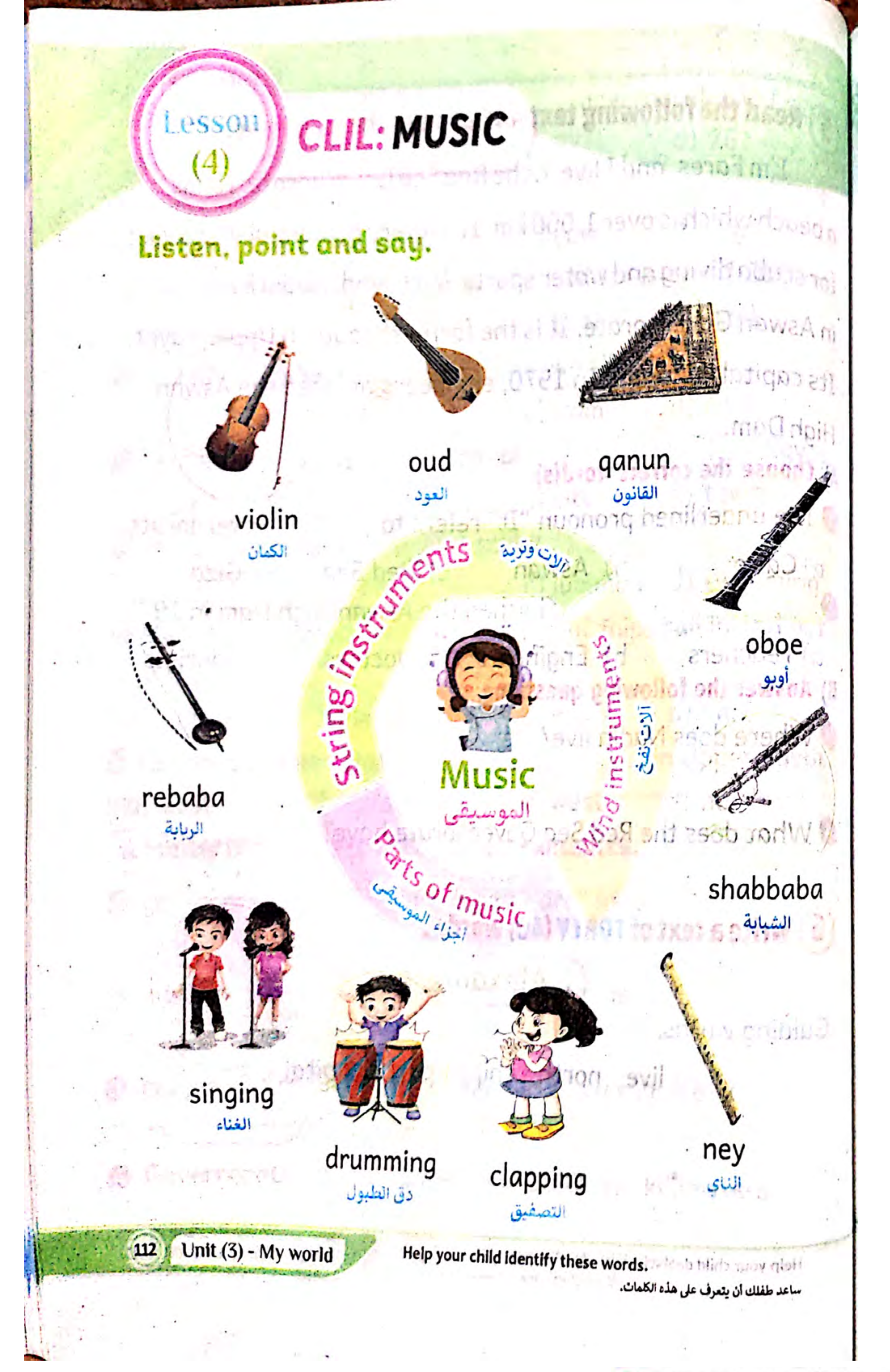
Alexandria

Guiding words:

(live - north - ships - port - capital)

....

....



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Kinds of music in Egypt أنواع الموسيقى في مصر

folk music	موسيقى شعبية	Bedouin music	موسيقى بدوية
Saidi music	موسيقى صعيدية	modern styles of music	موسيقى حديثة
Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية		



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

different	مختلف	song	أغنية	musician	موسيقار
event	حدث	type	نوع	style	شكل / أسلوب
important	مهم	special	خاص	popular	شعبي / محبوب
traditional	تقليدي				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
play	يعزف	played
drum	يدق الطبول	drummed
clap	يصفق	clapped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
sing	يغني	sang
know	يعرف	knew
put	يضع	put



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lots of	كثير من	such as	مثل
key part	جزء أساسي	farther south	أقصى الجنوب
home of	موطن لـ - منبع	all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر
mix with	يمزج بـ		

Listen and read.

What kind of music do you like?



Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping and drumming is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt. Sometimes it is mixed with other modern styles of music.

The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

مصر لديها الكثير من الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية. هناك أنماط مختلفة من أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد. فالموسيقيون الشعبيون من صعيد مصر يعزفون الموسيقى الصعيدية. فيستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الآلات الوترية مثل الكمان وآلات النفخ مثل الأوبو. الغناء وقرع الطبول أيضًا جزء أساسي. يوجد في أقصى الجنوب موطن الموسيقى النوبية ويعد التصفيق وقرع الطبول جزءًا هامًا من هذا النوع من الموسيقى. الموسيقى النوبية معروفة حاليًا في كل أنحاء مصر. أحيانًا تدمج مع أنواع حديثة أخرى من الموسيقى. أشهر الآلات الموسيقية البدوية هي الشبابة والربابة. تشمل الموسيقى البدوية غالبًا الغناء. تكون الأغاني حول الأحداث الخاصة.



Did you know?

Music was important in ancient Egypt, too. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

كانت الموسيقى هامة في مصر القديمة، أيضًا. ونحن نعرف ذلك لأن الكتبة رسموا صورًا للموسيقين وهم يعزفون على الآلات ووضع المصريون القدماء آلات داخل الأهرامات.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

important - instruments - know - pictures - put

Music was 1) .... in ancient Egypt, too, We 2) ....
this because scribes made 3) .... of musicians playing
4) .... , and ancient Egyptians 5) ....
instruments into pyramids.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... is a wind instrument.
   a) violin b) rebaba c) oboe d) guitar
2. The .... is a Bedouin musical instrument.
   a) shabbaba b) oud c) violin d) guitar
3. The rebaba is a .... instrument.
   a) wind b) string c) modern d) windy
4. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play .... music.
   a) ancient b) new c) modern d) Saidi
5. Nubian music is popular all .... Egypt.
   a) over b) up c) in d) on

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lots of - folk - Egypt - music - has - traditional - .

....

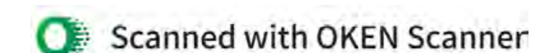
2. like - What - music - of - do you - kind - ?

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. Musicians in farther south of Egypt play Nubian music. Musicians in the deserts of Egypt play Bedouin music. Musicians in Egypt use many musical instruments, such as the violin, the oboe, the shabbaba and the rebaba.

A) Choose the correct word(s)





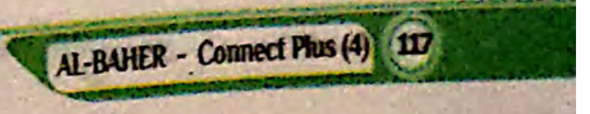
Vocabulary كلمات

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي	patterns	أنماط / نقوش
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبي	fighting	قتال
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	costumes	أزياء
Tahtib	التحطيب	plain	سادة
rhythm	إيقاع	alongside	بمحاذاة
stick	عصا	simsimeya	آلة السمسمية
tradition	تقليد	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية / حِرَف
occasion	مناسبة	carpet	سجادة
complicated	معقد	wool	صوف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يحرك	moved	step	يخطو	stepped
perform	يؤدي	performed	decorate	يزين	decorated



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Look and read.


Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas.

Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.

Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright colored and patterned.

In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

الرقص الشعبي له تاريخ طويل في مصر، وهو مرتبط بالموسيقى الشعبية في مناطق مختلفة. الرقص النوبي ذو حيوية وبهجة. يحرك الناس أذرعهم وأقدامهم على إيقاع الموسيقى. الرقص بالعصا على الأرجح هو الرقص الأكثر شهرة في الموسيقى الصعيدية التقليدية. يستخدم الراقصون العصا (العصايا) ويخطون بسرعة بأنماط مخصوصة. أيضًا التحطيب من تقاليد الموسيقى الصعيدية. حيث يقوم الراقصون بالرقص بعناية بالعصا بطريقة تشبه القتال. يرتدي الراقصون أزياء خاصة. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس داكنة وسادة (ذات لون واحد) أو زاهية اللون وذات نقوش. في المدن بمحاذاة قناة السويس هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقى والرقص. يعزف العازفون على آلة السمسمية، وهي آلة بدوية، بالإضافة إلى الطبول.

Help your child read and learn about folk dancing.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الرقص الشعبي.

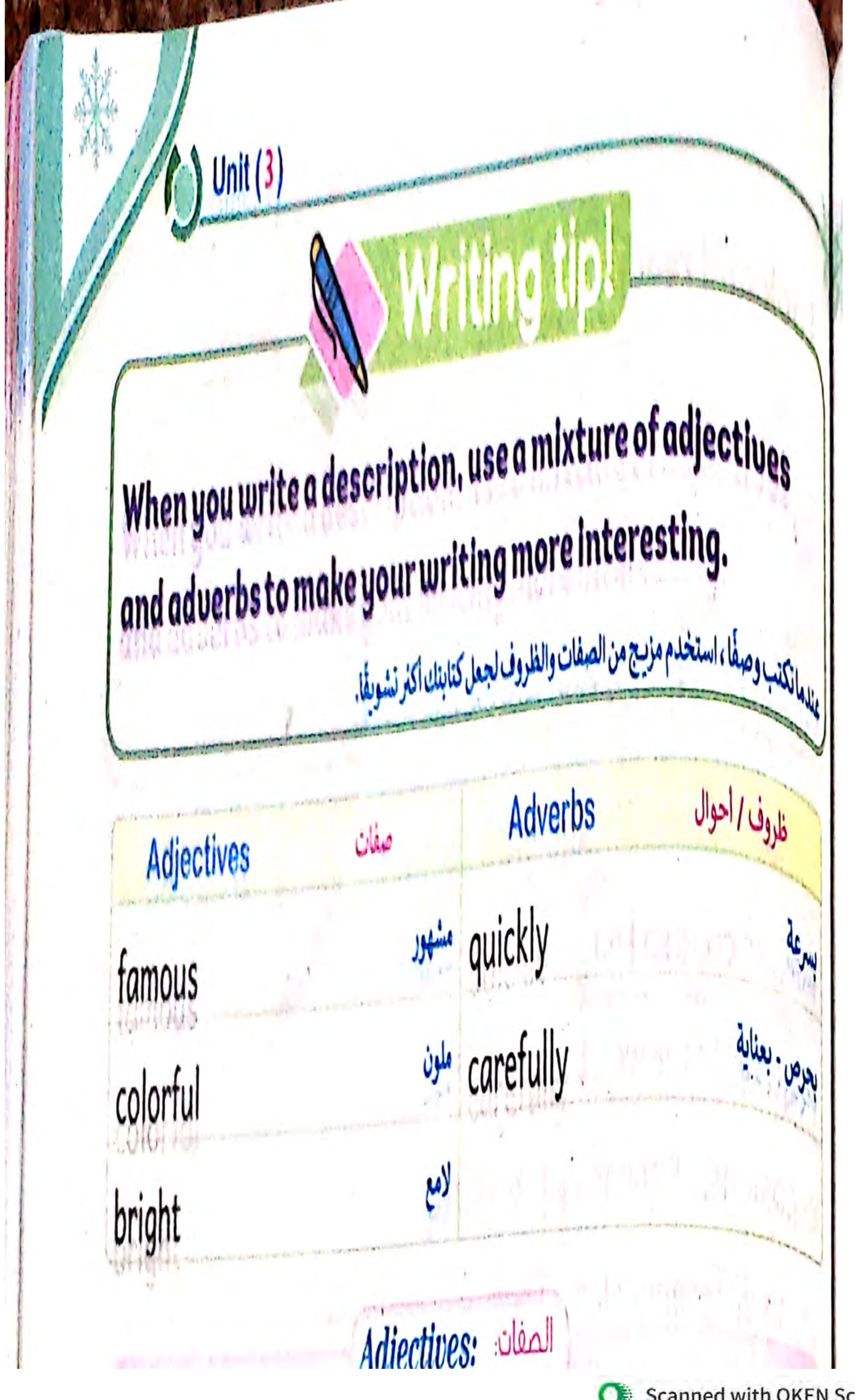
Look and read.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy khayameya in many traditonal stores and markets.

هناك تاريخ طويل من الحرف اليدوية التقليدية في مصر. واثنان من أشهر الحرف اليدوية هما الخيامية وصناعة السجاد. في الماضي ، أنشأ صناع الخيام الخيامية لتزيين الخيام الضخمة لحفلات الزفاف والمناسبات العائلية الأخرى. تم تصميم أنماط الخيامية بشكل جميل باستخدام ألوان مختلفة. اليوم يمكنك شراء الخيامية من العديد من المتاجر والأسواق التجارية.

Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

صناعة السجاد حرفة مصرية أخرى. يمكن للشخص الماهر أن يعمل بسرعة ، لكن الأمر يستغرق سنوات عديدة لتعلم كيفية صنع سجادة مصرية: النقوش لامعة وزاهية الألوان وكل سجادة مصنوعة بعناية باستخدام الصوف المصري. يشتهر سجاد قشقاي وشيرازي بأنماطهما المعقدة باللونين الأحمر والأزرق.



Unit (3)

Writing tip!

When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

عندما تكتب وصفًا، استخدم مزيج من الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك أكثر تشويقًا.

Adjectives	صفات	Adverbs	ظروف / أحوال
famous	مشهور	quickly	بسرعة
colorful	ملون	carefully	بحرص ، بعناية
bright	لامع		

Adjectives: الصفات



parts of paragraph

1 The topic or introduction sentence. جملة الموضوع / المقدمة

- It's the first sentence. - هي الجملة الأولى.
- It explains the main idea of the paragraph. - تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.
- Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

- الجملة الرئيسية في الفقرة يتم توضيحها بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.

2 The last sentence. الجملة الأخيرة

- It usually presents a summary of the topic in other words

- عادة ما تقدم ملخصا للموضوع بأسلوب آخر.

Project

Sections of a tourist information guide
أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية

1) Location الموقع : where a place is in the country

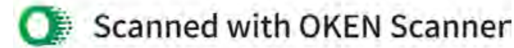
أين يوجد المكان في البلد.

e.g. It's in the north of the country.

2) Geography الجغرافيا : the environment and any natural features

البيئة وأي مظاهر طبيعية.

e.g. There are high mountains next to a river.



3) Attractions عوامل الجذب : what you can do and see in a place
ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل وترى في المكان

e.g. There's an art exhibition at the museum and a market every Tuesday.

4) History التاريخ : information about what happened here in the past
معلومات عما حدث هنا في الماضي

e.g. People used to make paper from papyrus reeds.

5) Culture الثقافة : traditional art, entertainment, food and music
الفن التقليدي والترفيه والطعام والموسيقى

e.g. People play traditional music on string instruments.

✓ **Write a paragraph.**

Make a tourist guide to the place where you live.

صمم دليلًا سياحيًا للمكان الذي تعيش فيه.

Aswan

Location : in the south of Egypt
Attractions : temples, monuments and the High Dam
Culture : traditional music

I live in Aswan. It's a city in the south of Egypt. Aswan has many attractions and monuments. There is Abo Simbel Temple. It's very famous. There is also the High Dam. It was built in 1970. People in Aswan play traditional music. They use traditional instruments like the rebaba and the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a part of folk music. If you visit Aswan, you'll have a good time there.

Help your child learn sections of a tourist information guide.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية.

Activities

1 Read and match.

1	Location	a)	information about what happened here in the past
2	Geography	b)	the environment and any natural features
3	Attractions	c)	traditional art, entertainment, food, and music.
4	History	d)	where a place is in the country
5	Culture	e)	what you can do and see in a place

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )   5- (   )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... dancing has a long history in Egypt.
   a) New   b) Fort   c) Folk   d) Modern
2. Nubian dancing is lively and ....
   a) good   b) bad   c) color   d) colorful
3. People move their arms and feet to the .... of the music.
   a) rhythm   b) song   c) bird   d) rebaba
4. .... is what you can do and see in a place.
   a) Attractions   b) Location   c) History   d) Culture
5. .... is traditional art, entertainment, food, and music.
   a) Attractions   b) Location   c) History   d) Culture

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. There is a long .... of traditional crafts in Egypt.

a) English b) Math c) Arabic d) history

2. Khayameya patterns are .... designed.

a) badly b) beautifully c) happily d) sadly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who created Khayameya in the past?

....

4. Where can we buy Khayameya?

....



4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Carpet making

Guiding words:

(craft - skilled - colorful - complicated)

....

....

Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

community	مجتمع	ney	الناي
neighborhood	حي سكني	oboe	أوبو (يشبه المزمار)
citizenship	مواطنة	oud	العود
pharaoh	فرعون	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
governorates of Egypt	محافظات مصر	string instrument	آلة وترية
history	تاريخ	rebaba	الربابة
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	shabbaba	الشبابة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	simsimeya	السمسمية
scribe	كاتب	Raqs Assaya	رقص العصا
capital city	العاصمة	Tahtib	التحطيب
clapping	التصفيق	qanun	القانون

Possessive forms

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his	+ noun	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	+ noun	hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير عاقل	its	+ noun	----	
We	نحن	our	+ noun	ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your	+ noun	yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their	+ noun	theirs	ملكهم



Writing Corner

My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. I live in a village. There is a sports club and I'm part of this community. At the club, we share our ideas and help keep it clean. It's good to be helpful and useful in your community.

My governorate

There are 27 governorates in Egypt today. I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's in the north of Egypt. It's very big. It's very important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. There are many attractions in Alexandria, such as Qaitbay Fort.

Music in Egypt

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

Ancient Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.



Activities on Unit (3)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians .... everything that happened.
   a) learnt b) wrote down c) worked d) used
2. Ancient Egyptians wrote in...
   a) Arabic b) hieroglyphs c) French d) English
3. Hieroglyphs are pictures or ....
   a) birds b) symbols c) deawings d) letters
4. We can see hieroglyphs today in .... and museums.
   a) classrooms b) caves c) cinemas d) tombs

2 Listen and complete.

1. A ....is a group of people who live together.
2. I live with my ....
3. There are many .... things about my community.
4. In our community we can do many .... things.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

countryside - New Valley - 27 - people

Ali : How many governorates are there in Egypt?
Omar : There are 1) .... governorates.
Ali : What is in a governorate?
Omar : Cities and 2).. .
Ali : Which governorate is the biggest?
Omar : It is 3)... .
Ali : How many 4)............................... live in Cairo governorate?
Omar : 10 million people.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... is behaving in a way that helps your society.
   a) Community b) Neighborhood c) Building d) Citizenship
2. These are Adam's shoes. They're ....
   a) ours b) its c) his d) hers
3. This is our school. It's ....
   a) your b) yours c) mine d) ours
4. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs.
   a) write b) wrote c) writing d) writes

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

6 The Reader

A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa's eyes aren't good now. ☐
2. Grandpa can sew. ☐



3. Zeinab loved a big .... on the wall of the shop.

   a) chair b) picture c) sofa d) bed

4. Grandpa can .... Zeinab to learn sewing.

   a) help b) play c) learn d) do

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. dancing - lovely - Nubian - is - .

....

2. Governorate - I - in - live - Alexandria - the - .

....

3. you - is - A community - a place - live - where - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Aswan

Guiding words:

(live - Governorate - south - High Dam) .

....

....

Activities On Review (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we eat and .... , we use our digestive system.
   a) drink b) breathe c) move d) listen
2. A special liquid .... food into energy.
   a) eats b) goes c) works d) changes
3. When we breathe, we use our .... system.
   a) nervous b) respiratory c) digestive d) muscular
4. We breathe in air through our ....
   a) ear b) nose c) eye d) hand

2 Listen and complete.

1. Water lily grows in ....
2. The stem reaches down to the .... of the lake.
3. Water lily has a .... stem.
4. The roots of water lily plants .... under the water.

3 Read and complete.

meet - capital - Governorate - live

Omar : Hello! Nice to meet you.
Nadia : Hello! Nice to ....(1).......... you, too.
Omar : Where do you ....(2)..........?
Nadia : I live in Aswan ....(3)...........
Omar : Where is it?
Nadia : It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its ....(4).......... is Aswan.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....
   a) far b) loudly c) slowly d) quick
2. The giant squid is .... than the crab.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small
3. Our .... controls everything we do.
   a) brain b) stomach c) lung d) nose
4. This is my cousins' house. It's ....
   a) theirs b) them c) their d) they

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) plants b) animals c) birds d) fish
2. Some water plants can cover a very .... area.
   a) large b) different c) small d) difficult

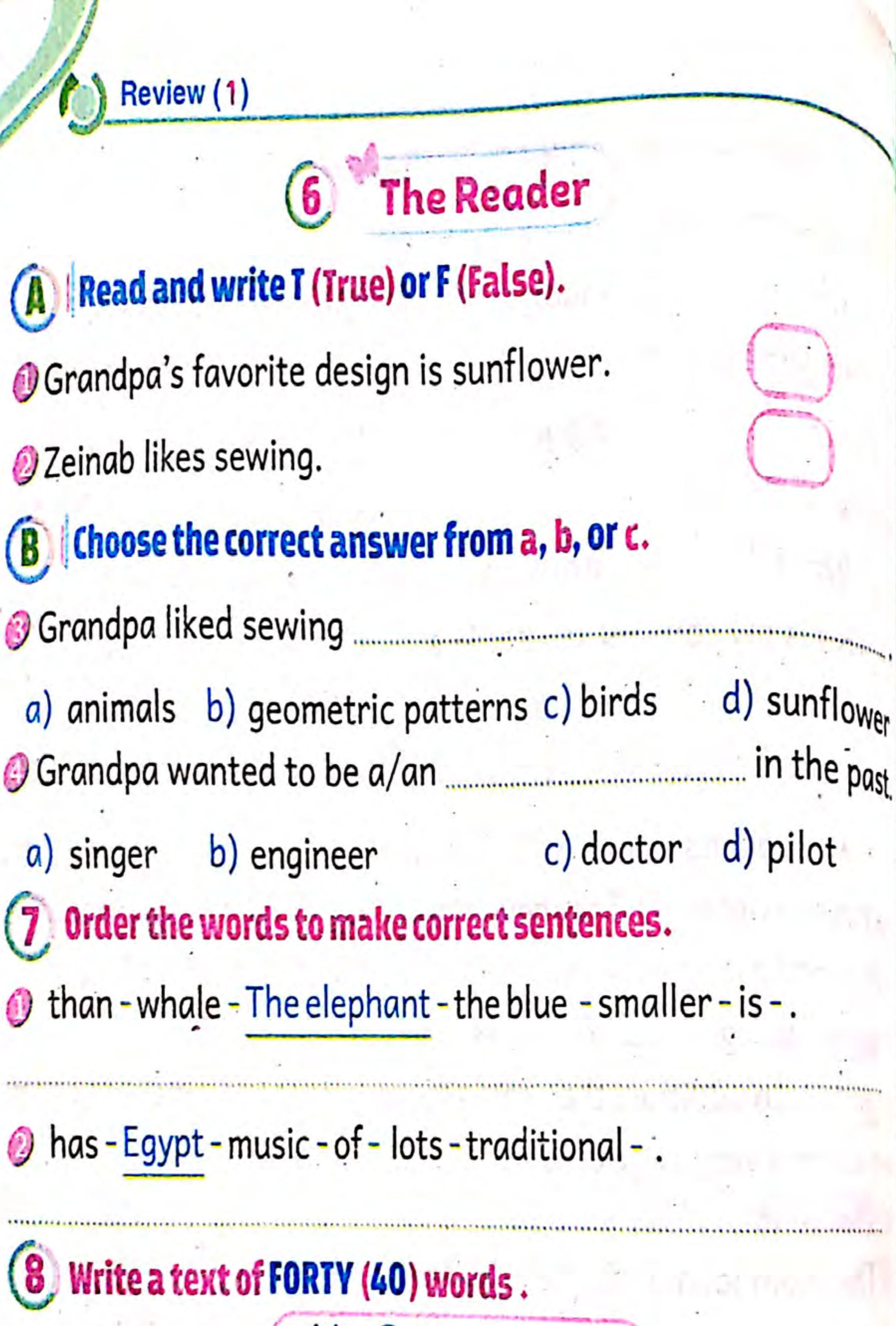
B) Answer the following questions.

3. What parts of a water lily are on top of the water?

....

4. What parts of a water lily are under the water?

....



6 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa's favorite design is sunflower. ( )
2. Zeinab likes sewing. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

3. Grandpa liked sewing ....

a) animals b) geometric patterns c) birds d) sunflower

4. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... in the past.

a) singer b) engineer c) doctor d) pilot

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. than - whale - The elephant - the blue - smaller - is - .

....

2. has - Egypt - music - of - lots - traditional - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

My Governorate

Guiding words:

(Red Sea - beach - popular - diving)

....

....

NON-FICTION READER
Coral Reefs

Look and read.



What are coral reefs? They look like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates, called polyps. They have a hard exoskeleton, and they don't move – they stay in the same place all the time.

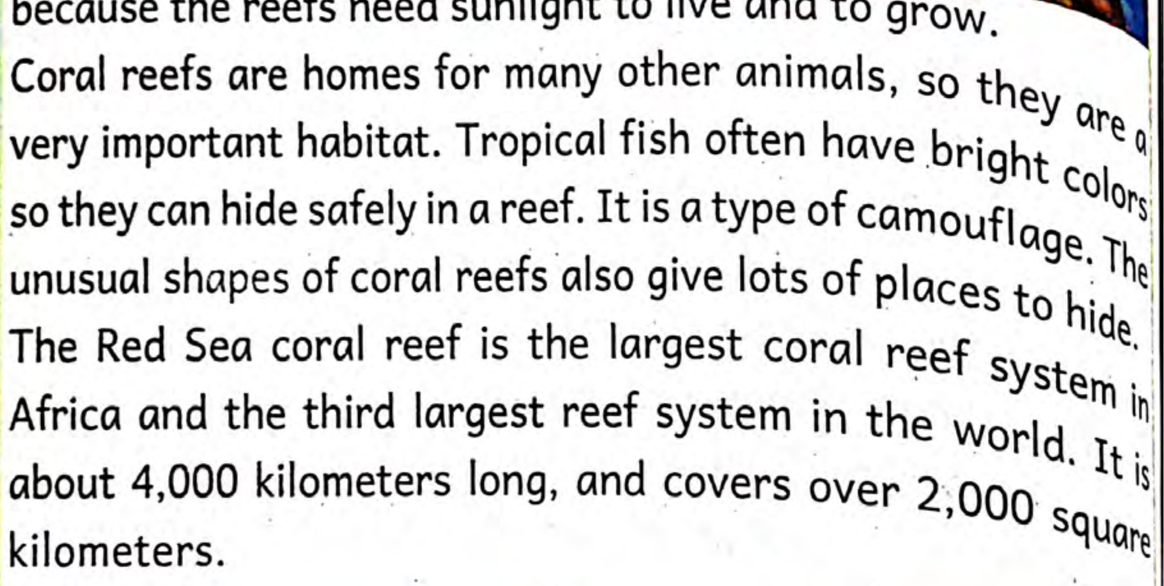
Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly. They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years.

We think coral reefs have very bright colors. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny algae that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see. In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny organisms.

ما هي الشعاب المرجانية؟ تبدو وكأنها مكونة من النباتات ولكن هذا خطا. تتكون الشعاب المرجانية من آلاف اللافقاريات الصغيرة جدًا التي تسمى البوليب. لديها هيكل خارجي صلب ولا تتحرك - تبقى في نفس المكان طول الوقت. تنمو أنواع مختلفة من البوليب في أشكال وأحجام مختلفة. لكنها تنمو ببطء شديد. في بعض الأحيان يمكن أن تنمو لأكثر من عشرة آلاف سنة. - نعتقد أن الشعاب المرجانية لها ألوان زاهية جدًا ومع ذلك فإن معظم الشعاب المرجانية ليس لها لون. لديها أجسام صافية وهيكلها الخارجي أبيض. يأتي اللون من الطحالب الصغيرة التي تعيش داخل البوليت، و ألوانها الزاهية هى التي يمكننا رؤيتها. ففي جزء صغير من الشعب المرجاني يوجد ملايين من الكائنات الحية الصغيرة.

Help your child read about coral reefs.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الشعاب المرجانية.



Coral polyps can live in all the oceans around the world, in very cold water and in warm seas. They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water. The water must be shallow too, because the reefs need sunlight to live and to grow.

Coral reefs are homes for many other animals, so they are a very important habitat. Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of camouflage. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to hide. The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2,000 square kilometers.

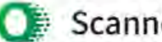
يمكن أن تعيش الشعاب المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم، في المياه شديدة البرودة وفي البحار الدافئة. وتنمو فقط معًا وتصنع شعابًا مرجانية في المياه الدافئة.
يجب أن تكون المياه ضحلة أيضًا لأن الشعاب المرجانية تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس لتعيش وتنمو.
الشعاب المرجانية هي موطن للعديد من الحيوانات الأخرى لذلك فهي موطن هام جدًا. غالبًا ما تكون الأسماك الاستوائية زاهية الألوان حتى تتمكن من الاختباء بأمان في الشعاب المرجانية. وهذا نوع من التمويه (التخفي). تتيح أيضًا الأشكال غير العادية للشعاب المرجانية أماكن كثيرة للاختباء.
إن الشعاب المرجانية المتواجدة بالبحر الأحمر هى أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية في إفريقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب في العالم ويبلغ طولها حوالي ٤,٠٠٠ كيلو متر ويغطي أكثر من ٢,٠٠٠ كيلو متر مربع.

Read and answer.

1. Why do coral reefs have bright colors? ....
2. Why do coral reefs need sunlight? ....
3. Why do tropical fish live in coral reefs? ....

Help your child read about coral reefs.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الشعاب المرجانية.



Look and read.



At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer. This is because of global warming. When the water temperature rises, the algae inside the coral polyps leave. The algae give the coral reef its bright colors. So, when the algae leave, the reef is pale and white this is called coral bleaching.

Coral bleaching can also happen when there is pollution, too much sunlight, or not enough water. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies, and the animals who live in the reef cannot stay there.

في هذه اللحظة، تزداد البحار والمحيطات على الأرض دفئًا. هذا بسبب الاحتباس الحراري. عندما ترتفع درجة حرارة الماء تغادر الطحالب التي بداخل الشعاب المرجانية. تعطي الطحالب للشعاب المرجانية ألوانها الزاهية لذلك عندما تغادر الطحالب تصبح الشعاب المرجانية شاحبة وبيضاء وهذا ما يسمى تبيض المرجان. كما يمكن أن يحدث تبيض المرجان عندما يكون هناك تلوث أو وجود الكثير من أشعة الشمس أو عدم وجود المياه بشكل كافي. فعندما تفقد الشعاب المرجانية ألوانها فإنها تموت وبالتالي لا تستطيع الحيوانات التي تعيش بداخلها البقاء.

In 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Sea can survive changes in temperature. They are the only types of coral in the world that can do this. The water of the Red Sea is warmer than other seas, so the coral in the Red Sea does not have the same problem with coral bleaching. Scientists hope that they can use the Red Sea coral to protect other coral reefs around the world.

To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our oceans. We must also work together to reduce global warming. It's important to protect the Red Sea coral reef and other coral reefs around the world.

في عام ٢٠٢٠ أكتشف العلماء أن بعض الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر يمكنها أن تتحمل التغيرات في درجات الحرارة فهى النوع الوحيد من المرجان في العالم الذي يمكنه فعل ذلك. مياه البحر الأحمر أكثر دفئًا من البحار الأخرى، لذلك لا يوجد نفس المشكلة للمرجان في البحر الأحمر مع أبيضاض المرجان، ويأمل العلماء أن يتمكنوا من استعمال مرجان البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية الأخرى حول العالم. ولحماية الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج أيضًا تقليل



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral reefs are large groups of colored plants. ( )
2. Coral reefs grow very quickly. ( )
3. Coral polyps are lots of different colors. ( )
4. Coral reefs grow in very deep water in the ocean. ( )
5. Coral reefs need sunlight. ( )

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a or b.

1. What is happening to the Earth's seas and oceans now?
   a) The water is becoming warmer.
   b) The water is becoming more shallow.
2. What gives coral its bright colors?
   a) Sunlight and tiny organisms in the sea water.
   b) Algae that lives inside the coral polyps.
3. What causes coral bleaching?
   a) Pollution, too much sunlight and not enough water.
   b) Pollution, and too many sea animals living in the coral.
4. What happens to the coral when there is coral bleaching?
   a) Fish and sea animals eat the coral.
   b) The coral dies.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete

1. Coral reefs are ....
2. Coral reefs are important for our oceans because ....
3. Coral bleaching is happening because ....
4. We can protect coral reefs by ....

4 Listen and complete there are two extra items in the box.

cooler - coral bleaching - coral reefs - global warming -
less pollution - sea temperatures - serious problem - warmer

1. Some corals in the Red Sea can survive rising ....
2. The water in the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
3. Corals in the Red Sea don't have a .... with coral bleaching.
4. Scientists hope they can help protect some ....
   around the world.
5. We need to have .... in the world's oceans.
6. We also need to reduce .... to stop sea temperatures rising.

5 Answer the following questions.

1. What are coral reefs?

....

2. Why are coral reefs important?

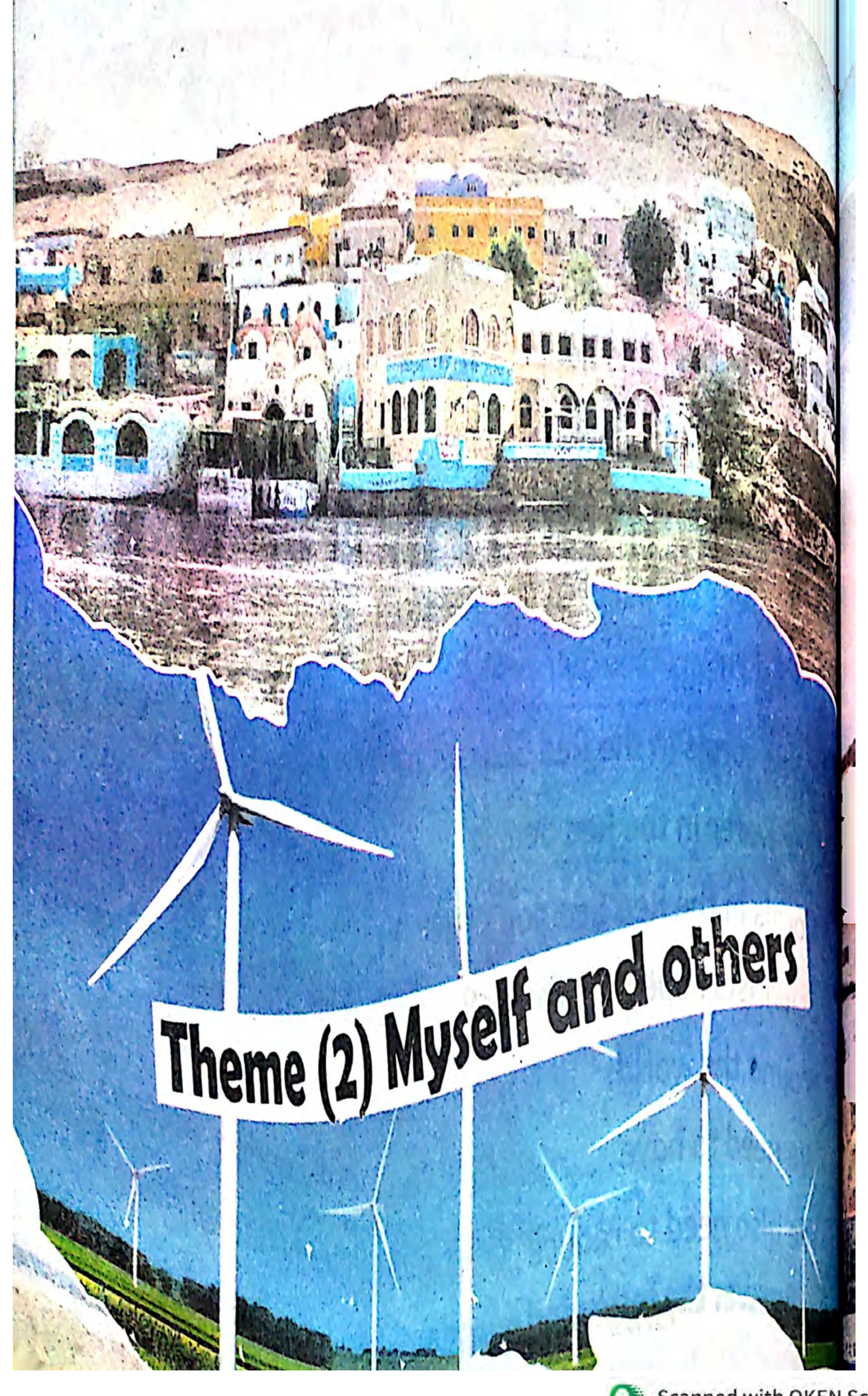
....

3. What problems do coral reefs have?

....

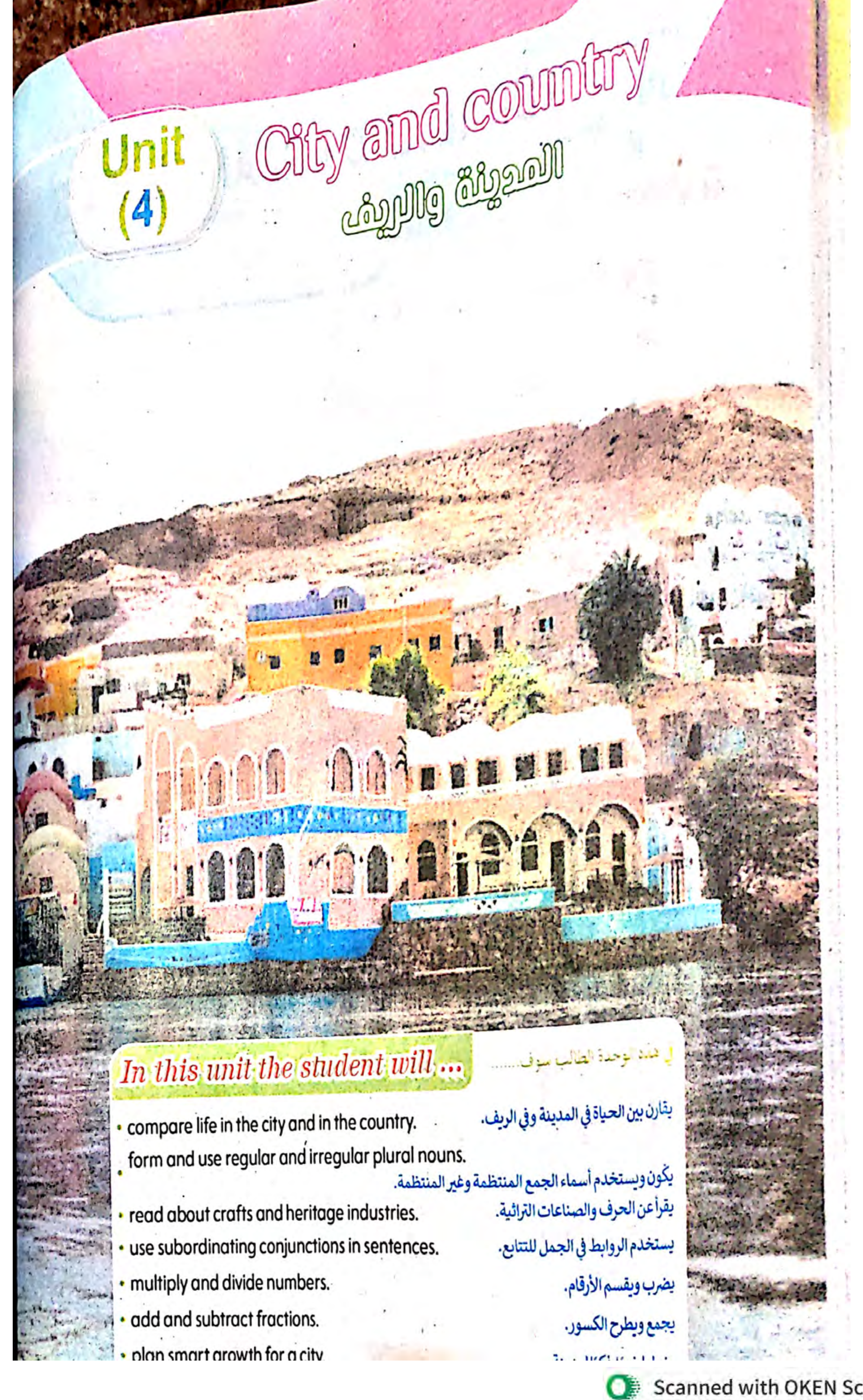
4. Who is affected by coral reefs problems?

....


Theme (2) Myself and others

Unit (4) City and country

المدينة والريف



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- compare life in the city and in the country. يقارن بين الحياة في المدينة وفي الريف.
- form and use regular and irregular plural nouns. يكون ويستخدم أسماء الجمع المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.
- read about crafts and heritage industries. يقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.
- use subordinating conjunctions in sentences. يستخدم الروابط في الجمل للتتابع.
- multiply and divide numbers. يضرب ويقسم الأرقام.
- add and subtract fractions. يجمع ويطرح الكسور.
- plan smart growth for a city



RURAL AND URBAN PLACES

Listen and repeat.



densely populated
ذو كثافة سكانية عالية



pedestrians
المشاة



sparsely populated
ذو كثافة سكانية منخفضة

Urban Places
أماكن حضرية

Rural Places



الأماكن

Services



congestion
ازدحام



isolated
منعزل



workshop
ورشة



school
مدرسة



shop
محل

Help your child identify rural and urban places.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأماكن الريفية والحضرية.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

city	مدينة	dense	كثيف / كثير
village	قرية	sparse	قليل الكثافة
metropolitan	عاصمي (من العاصمة)	traditional	تقليدي
Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى	area	منطقة
busy	مزدحم	careful	حريص
desert	الصحراء	like	مثل
population	السكان / عدد السكان	environment	بيئة
rural	ريفي / قروي	inhabitant	ساكن / قاطن
urban	مدني / حضري		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted
live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
tell	يخبر	told
have	يمتلك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	live in	يعيش في
tell about	يخبر عن	more than	أكثر من
a lot of	كثير من	have to	يجب أن
(be) going to + inf	سوف	in the desert	في الصحراء
on isolated place	في مكان منعزل	close to	قريب من

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look, listen and read.

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Fareeda

مرحبًا، اسمي فريدة وأريد أن أخبركم عن المكان الذي أعيش فيه. أنا أعيش في القاهرة الكبرى. إنها منطقة حضرية وذات كثافة سكانية عالية. هناك أكثر من ٢٠ مليون ساكنًا، لذلك إنه مكان مزدحم جدًا. يوجد الكثير من السيارات لذلك يوجد أيضًا ازدحام. إذا كنت من المشاة، يجب أن تكون حذرًا.

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. Zein lives in a ....
2. It's .... populated, only about 700 people live here.
3. It's also a very .... place.
4. It's in the desert so it's an .... place.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

shops - densely - million - Greater Cairo

Khaled : Where do you live?

Waleed : I live in .... (1) ....

Khaled : Is it sparsely or .... (2) .... populated?

Waleed : It's densely populated.

Khaled : How many inhabitants are there?

Waleed : There are 20 .... (3) .... inhabitatnts.

Khaled : What services are there?

Waleed : There are .... (4) .... and schools.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I live in a/an .... environment. I live in Giza.
   a) rural b) urban c) village d) city
2. The population in Cairo is ....
   a) sparse b) little c) dense d) few
3. Ali lives in a rural environment. There ...... a lot of inhabitants.
   a) are b) aren't c) has d) is

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. I am a .... I always go to school on foot.

a) pedestrian b) driver c) farmer d) pilot

5. Cairo is a .... area.

a) metropolitan b) rural c) village d) desert

6. There are a lot of cars in Alexandria. There is ....

a) trees b) congestion c) fraction d) digestion

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It is a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.



5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - live - Where - you - ?

....

2. live - areas - More people - in - rural - .

....

3. is - sparsely - My village - populated - .

....

6 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

services - sparsely - isolated - people

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's 1) .... populated - only about 700 2) .... live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an 3) .... place, too. We have a lot of 4) .... close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Where you live"

Guiding words:

(live - Greater Cairo - metropolitan)

....

....



LANGUAGE

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

sheep	خروف - الغنم - خراف	person - people	شخص - أشخاص
donkey	حمار	woman - women	سيدة - سيدات
wife	زوجة	buffalo	جاموسة
goslings	صغار الأوز	goose - geese	وزة - أوز

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

program	برنامج	onions	بصل	interview	مقابلة - حوار
several	العديد	copper	معدن النحاس	irrigation	عملية الري
lucky	محظوظ	coal	فحم	features	خصائص
historically	تاريخياً	aluminum	الألومنيوم	resources	الموارد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
develop	يطور	developed	give	يعطي	gave
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	grow	يزرع	grew
wonder	يتعجب	wondered	have	يمتلك	had



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	half of	نصف
of course	بالطبع	grown up	بالغ - راشد

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family – my dad and my grandpa – and two women – my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters?



Plural Forms

صيغ الجمع

A noun can be **singular** or **plural**.
To change a noun from singular into plural, we follow some rules.

1 Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers   sister → sisters

2 Nouns ending in: (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es)

buffalo → buffaloes   box → boxes
dish → dishes   watch → watches

3 Nouns ending in: (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies   city → cities

4 Nouns ending in: a vowel + y, we add (s).

donkey → donkeys   boy → boys

5 Irregular plural: The noun changes (There is no rule)

man → men   woman → women
goose → geese   child → children

6 Some nouns don't change.

a sheep → sheep
a fish → fish   a deer → deer

Note:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I saw one .... in the river.
   a) goose b) geese c) a goose d) gosling
2. There are four .... in my family.
   a) man b) women c) child d) boy
3. We have some .... in the village.
   a) an animal b) animals c) animal d) bird
4. There is .... in the street.
   a) cat b) a cat c) cats d) dogs
5. My mom has two ....
   a) baby b) babies c) a baby d) child

2 Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1. donkey ....
2. woman ....
3. potato ....
4. buffalo ....
5. man ....
6. city ....
7. tooth ....
8. date ....
9. person ....
10. sister ....
11. baby ....
12. child ....
13. mountain ....
14. deer ....
15. goose ....
16. brother ....
17. tomato ....
18. sheep ....
19. bus ....
20. fish ....
21. family ....

Listen and read.

Presenter : Have you ever wondered why cities develop where they do? As you can probably imagine, there are several reasons. Today we are talking to Dr. Hossam about this topic. Welcome to our program, Dr. Hossam.

هل تساءلت يومًا لماذا تتطور المدن حيث يحدث ذلك؟ كما يمكنك أن تتخيل على الأرجح. هناك عدة أسباب. اليوم نتحدث مع الدكتور حسام حول هذا الموضوع. مرحبًا بكم في برنامجنا يا دكتور حسام.

Dr. Hossam : Thank you. So, one of the main reasons is for food and transportation. Have you ever noticed that a lot of cities are developed near bodies of water? These can be rivers, lakes or oceans.

شكرًا لك. إذن، فإن أحد الأسباب الرئيسية هو الطعام والمواصلات. هل سبق لك أن لاحظت أن الكثير من المدن قد تم تطويرها بالقرب من المسطحات المائية؟ هذه المسطحات يمكن تكون هذه الأنهار أو البحيرات أو المحيطات.

Presenter : So why are bodies of water important for cities then?

لماذا تعتبر المسطحات المائية مهمة للمدن إذن؟

Dr. Hossam : For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which gives people food to eat. Another important reason is that people can use them for transportation. If a city wants to trade its goods with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Another very important reason is that fresh water can be used for irrigation. Farmers need to water their plants, you know.

لشيء واحد، لديهم حيوانات فيها، مثل الأسماك والطيور، مما يعطي الناس طعامًا ليأكلوه. سبب آخر مهم هو أن الناس يستخدمونها للنقل. إذا أرادت مدينة أن تتاجر بسلعها مع أماكن أخرى، فيمكن أن يتم نقلها بسهولة إلى أماكن أخرى على متن القوارب. سبب آخر مهم للغاية هو أنه يمكن استخدام المياه العذبة للري. يحتاج المزارعون إلى سقي نباتاتهم، كما تعلم.

Presenter : Are there any other geographic features which make good places to start a city?

هل هناك أي خصائص جغرافية أخرى تشكل أماكن جيدة لبدء مدينة؟

Dr. Hossam	:	Yes, there are. Mountains are another place around the world where cities develop. Cities develop in the mountains because historically they are easier to protect. There are also minerals and good water sources in some mountains. The only bad part is that transportation is more difficult so they might be more isolated than cities near water. نعم، يوجد. الجبال هي مكان آخر حول العالم تتطور فيه المدن. تتطور المدن في الجبال لأنها تاريخيًا يسهل حمايتها. كما توجد معادن ومصادر مياه جيدة في بعض الجبال. الجزء السيئ الوحيد هو أن عملية النقل أصعب لذا فقد يكونون أكثر عزلة من المدن القريبة من المياه.
Presenter	:	Oh, I didn't think of that. Are there any more reasons? أوه، لم أفكر في ذلك. هل هناك المزيد من الأسباب؟
Dr. Hossam	:	Let me see. Well, a third big reason is because of natural resources. If there is a lot of natural resources in an area, a city may develop there. دعني أرى. حسنًا. السبب الرئيسي الثالث هو الموارد الطبيعية. إذا كان هناك الكثير من الموارد الطبيعية في منطقة ما، فقد تتطور المدينة هناك.
Presenter	:	Can you give us an example? هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالًا؟
Dr. Hossam	:	Of course - there are a lot of them, but oil, coal, aluminium, or copper are a few examples. Forests also give us a very important natural resource - paper. بالطبع، هناك الكثير منها، لكن النفط أو الفحم أو الألمنيوم أو النحاس أمثلة قليلة. توفر لنا الغابات أيضًا موردًا طبيعيًا مهمًا للغاية - الورق.
Presenter	:	Very interesting. Thank you very much, Dr. Hossam. مثير جدًا. شكرًا جزيلًا لك، دكتور حسام.



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Waleed lives in a small .... on the Nile.
   a) town b) village c) city d) country
2. Waleed's dad is a ....
   a) farmer b) teacher c) doctor d) vet
3. There are .... sheep.
   a) four b) five c) six d) three
4. You can see .... in the street.
   a) dogs b) cats c) rats d) bats

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

farmer - job - tomatoes - village

Waleed : Hello, Ziad. Where do you live?
Ziad : I live in a .... (1) ....
Waleed : What's your dad's .... (2) ....?
Ziad : He's a .... (3) ....
Waleed : What does he grow?
Ziad : He grows .... (4) .... and potatoes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are six .... on the farm.
   a) sheep b) a sheep c) goat d) buffalo
2. I have one ....
   a) brothers b) brother c) sisters d) cousins

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. How many .... are there?
 a) people b) person c) woman d) man
4. My uncle has four ....
 a) man b) children c) child d) girl
5. There .... a donkey.
 a) is b) was c) are d) were
6. These are ....
 a) baby b) boy c) babies d) girl
7. I have two ....
 a) sisters b) brother c) sister d) uncle
8. There are seven .... in my class.
 a) boy b) boys c) girl d) student
9. My mom bought four .... yesterday.
 a) goose b) geese c) potato d) tomato
10. .... are big animals.
 a) A buffalo b) A cat c) Buffaloes d) A tiger

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. six sheep - and - There are - two buffloes - .

....

2. any - brothers - Do - or sisters - have - you - ?

....

3. lives - a traditional - My family - home - in - .

....



LANGUAGE

Listen, point and say.



spin
ينسج / يغزل



Spinning & weaving
الغزل والنسيج



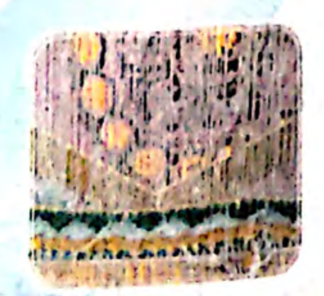
dye
يصبغ / صبغة



carpet
سجادة



dyed yarn
غزل (خيط) مصبوغ



warp
السُّداة (مد خيوط النسيج)

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

artisan جزفي / ماهر	weaving نسيج
workshop ورشة	guide مرشد
wool صوف	natural طبيعي
synthetic اصطناعي / صناعي	structure هيكل
yarn خيط	machine آلة / ماكينة
loom نول	geometric patterns أشكال هندسية
dark colors ألوان غامقة	skill مهارة
craft حرفة / مهنة	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained
collect	يجمع	collected
dry	يجفف	dried
use	يستخدم	used
prefer	يفضل	preferred
design	يصمم	designed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took
make	يصنع	made
weave	ينسج	wove
get	يحصل على	got
let	يدع / يترك	let
spin	يغزل / ينسج	spun

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn about يتعلم عن	pick out يختار
have to يجب أن / يضطر أن	make by hand يصنع يدويًا
ready for مستعد لـ	make it into يصنعوا منه
the same مطابق / نفس الشئ	

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

and read.

Visiting a Carpet Workshop

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

زيارة ورشة سجاد في الصيف الماضي كنت أريد حقًا أن أتعلم عن الحرف المصرية التقليدية. لذلك، أخذتني جدتي إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج لكي أتعلم عن هذه الحرفة. قام المرشد بتوضيح كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد بينما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون.

First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then, they need to dye the yarn – that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.

أولًا، يقومون بجمع الصوف من الأغنام. وعليهم أن ينظفوا ويغسلوا ويجففوا الصوف قبل أن يستخدموه. يقوم الحرفيون بغزل الصوف ليصنعوا منه خيوط بعد تنظيفه. ثم يحتاجون إلى صبغ الخيط هذه هي الطريقة التي تحصل بها على لونها. أعتقد أن الألوان الزاهية هي الأكثر جمالًا على الرغم من أن بعض الناس يفضلون الألوان الداكنة. يستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون فقط الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية، على الرغم من أن بعض ورش العمل الأخرى تستخدم الأصباغ الصناعية. أنا وجدتي نحب الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية لأنها تقليدية أكثر.

So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to boil the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

لذلك، الآن أنا أخمن أنك تتساءل كيف يقومون بصباغة الصوف. حسنًا، لقد تعلمت أن النباتات والجذور المختلفة تزرع أولًا في قرية ريفية. ثم يستخدمون هذه النباتات والجذور لصنع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف. يجب أن يقوموا بغلي الخيوط مع الأصباغ وبعد ذلك يتركوه ليجف. وبمجرد أن يجف، يمكنهم أن يستخدموه في نسيج السجاد.

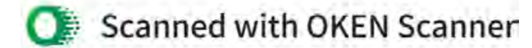
Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

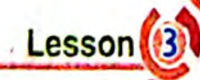
قبل أن ينسج الحرفيون السجاد، عليهم أن يصنعوا خيوط النسيج. فالخيوط هي بنية السجاد. أنهم يصنعون الخيوط باستخدام القطن المصري المغزول. وبعدها يستخدمون بنية السجاد والصوف المصبوغ لصنع سجاد جميل. يقوم الحرفيون بصناعة السجاد اليدوي مستخدمين ماكينة تسمى النول. إنهم يضيفون خيوط ملونة مختلفة لصنع أنماط هندسية.

My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

جعلتني جدتي أختار سجادة لغرفة نومي. في كل مرة أنظر إليها، أتذكر مدى العمل والمهارة التي يستغرقها لعمل سجادة واحدة فقط.

Help your child read about crafts and heritage industries.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.





Subordinating Conjunctions

روابط التتابع

After بعد — لربط فكرتين متتاليتين

After I went to park, I met my cousin.

Before قبل

e.g. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it.

As soon as بمجرد أن

e.g. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

so that لكي — لبيان الغرض أو السبب

e.g. My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshops so that I could learn about this craft.

Although = Even though بالرغم من ذلك — لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

While بينما - أثناء — لربط حدثين في نفس الوقت

e.g. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave.

Every time كل مرة

e.g. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

Help your child use subordinating conjunctions in sentences. ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم روابط التتابع في الجمل.



Notice:

- When we start with the conjunction, we put a comma (,) between the two clauses.

. إذا بدأنا الجملة بأداة الربط، نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I study hard .... I can get high grades.
   a) so that b) although c) after d) before
2. .... I got up, I washed my face.
   a) Before b) After c) Although d) As soon as
3. I always wash my hands .... I have my meal.
   a) before b) while c) so that d) although
4. They went swimming .... it was windy.
   a) so that b) as soon as c) although d) before
5. We help in the kitchen .... we have dinner.
   a) before b) after c) while d) so that

2 Read and complete with:

although - so that - while - before - Every time

1. Tamer couldn't eat .... he was hungry.
2. The parents watched their children .... they played in the park.
3. Layla is studying English .... she can be a journalist.
4. We had to chop the vegetables .... we cooked them.
5. .... we go to Alexandria. I remember our wonderful holiday there.

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 They like natural vegetable dyes as they are more ....

a) traditional b) modern c) classic d) fashion

2 You are wondering how the .... dye the wool.

a) roots b) artisans c) farmers d) teachers

3 The plants and roots are grown in a .... village.

a) urban b) rural c) big d) far

4 Artisans use plants and roots to make .... dyes.

a) bad b) ugly c) useless d) beautiful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 He does his homework................ he can get high marks.

a) although b) so that c) before d) after

2 They missed the bus .... they were early.

a) before b) although c) after d) that

3 .... the yarn is dry, the artisans can use it to weave a carpet.

a) As soon as b) While c) So d) Before

4 Hany was playing with his toys....... his sister was watching TV.

a) so that b) as soon as c) while d) although

5 They swam in the sea .... the water was cold.

a) so that b) after c) while d) although

6 She got tired .... she ran to the park.

a) after b) while c) before d) so that

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. artisans - to - What - do - use - make - a carpet - ?

2. collect - the - They - wool - sheep - from - .

3. took - me - My father - the workshop - to - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, my grandmother took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.

A) Choose the correct word(s).



Multiplying & dividing numbers

ضرب وقسمة الأرقام

Multiplication
الضرب

It is another way to add the same numbers many times.

eg. There are 15 farmers in Lama's village. Each farmer has 35 sheep. How many sheep are in Lama's village?

$$15 \times 35 = 525 \text{ sheep}$$

Division
القسمة

It is to separate something into equal groups.

eg. There are 48 children in Sherif's class. His teacher wants the children to work on a project in groups of 6. How many groups do the children have to make?

$$48 \div 6 = 8 \text{ groups}$$

Adding & subracting fractions

جمع وطرح الكسور

A fraction
الكسر

It is a part of a whole.

eg. The children are going to spend $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class reading in English, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class speaking in English, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the class watching a movie. How much of the class will they spend on reading and speaking in English?

$$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of the class}$$

Help your child multiply and divide numbers.
Help your child add and subtract fractions.



1 Answer these multiplication problems.

1. There are 21 weavers working in a weaving workshop. Each weaver can make 24 carpets each year. How many carpets does the workshop produce each year?

.... × .... = ... carpets

2. Hany's family has 36 geese. Each goose has 8 babies, called goslings. How many goslings are there?

.... × .... = ... goslings

2 Answer these division problems.

1. Amira's hens laid 240 eggs. She wants to sell the eggs at the market. If she can put 6 eggs in each box, how many boxes does she need?

.... ÷ .... = ... boxes

2. Amir grew 693 kilos of potatoes. He can put 3 kilos of potatoes in each sack. How many sacks does he need?

.... ÷ .... = ... sacks

3 Answer this problem with fractions.

1. Nagwa has a large loaf of bread. If she gives $\frac{1}{2}$ of the loaf to her grandparents, and $\frac{1}{4}$ to her parents, how much of the bread does she have left?

....

2. The children are going to spend $\frac{1}{2}$ of the sports lesson running, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the sports class jumping and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the sports class playing a ball game. How much of the class will they spend running and jumping?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6) - WRITING - PROJECT



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

location	موقع	port	ميناء
smart growth	النمو الذكي	planners	مخططون
neighborhood	حي سكني	transportation	وسائل المواصلات



Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

industry	صناعة	services	خدمات
Montaza Palace	قصر المنتزه	important	هام
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	parents	الوالدان
wherever	في أي مكان	apartment	شقة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

- ***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked
protect	يحمي	protected
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed

- ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
have	يملك	had
buy	يشتري	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as you might know	كما قد تعلم
the second largest city	ثاني أكبر مدينة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the text about Dina's city. Notice the headings of the paragraphs. اقرأ النص عن مدينة دينا. ولاحظ عناوين الفقرات

Alexandria

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

My city

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Amrya. There are 6 people in my family: my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either.

What I like

I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

انا دينا وسوف أخبركم عن نفسي اليوم.

مدينتي: أنا أعيش في مدينة الإسكندرية. إنها مدينة جميلة على البحر المتوسط. كما قد تعرف أنها ثاني أكبر مدينة في مصر، بها عدد سكان يصل إلى أكثر من ٥ مليون شخص. و بها ميناء هام ويوجد الكثير من الصناعات هنا أيضًا.

الحي السكني الخاص بي: أعيش مع عائلتي في شقة سكنية في حي يدعى «العامرية». يوجد ٦ أشخاص في عائلتي: والدي وأجدادي، وأخي مجدي وأنا. شقتنا ليست كبيرة ولكنها ليست صغيرة أيضا.

ما الذي أحبه: أحب مدينتي لأن لدينا الكثير من الخدمات. فلدينا مدارس و مستشفيات والكثير من المحلات حيث تستطيع شراء أي شيء تريده. يمكننا أيضا أن نستخدم الأتوبيس لنذهب إلى أي مكان نريده. واحد من الأماكن المفضلة لدي هو قصر المنتزه. يوجد حدائق جميلة والتي أزورها أحيانًا مع عائلتي. أنا أحب مدينتي كثيرًا وأتمنى أن تزور الإسكندرية يومًا ما.

Help your child write a long text.



Writing longer texts
كتابة النصوص طويلة

In longer texts, there is ...
في النصوص الطويلة هناك

1- an introduction: it presents the general idea of the text.
١- مقدمة: وتقدم الفكرة العامة للنص.

2- The conlusion: it comes at the end to present a summary of the ideas.
٢- الخاتمة: وتأتي في النهاية وتقدم ملخصا للأفكار.

When you use clear paragraphs, ...
عندما تستخدم فقرات واضحة

1- Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.
١- استخدم عدة فقرات قصيرة بدلًا من فقرة أو فقرتين طوال.

2- You can give each paragraph a heading (عنوان).
٢- يمكنك أن تعطي كل فقرة عنوانًا.

Read Wael's fact file about his city, Aswan.

Fact file



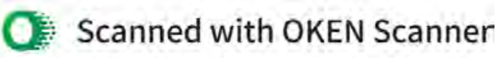
My city
City: Aswan
Location: on River Nile / south of Luxor
Population: 1,568,000 / not densely populated
Sites: Philae Temple / not a lot of industry

My neighborhood
Home: big apartment near the center of the city
Family: parents, grandma, brother Magdy, sisters Mona and Reem

What I like
Likes: driking lemonade and watching the boats on the river
Favorite places: Botanical Gardens / The bazaar
Good Services: schools, hospitals, shops, good transportation (train service to Luxor)



Help your child write a long text.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب نص طويل.



Project: A city smart growth plan

What is Smart Growth?



Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth:

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good public transportation and no cars.
- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops, markets, doctors, government offices, etc.
- There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

ما هو النمو الذكي؟ النمو الذكي هو طريقة لتخطيط مناطق جديدة في مدينة. يريد مخططو النمو الذكي أن يحموا البيئة ويحسنوا حياة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها. هذه بعض الأفكار وراء النمو الذكي.

- يستطيع الناس أن يسيروا إلى العمل أو المدرسة.
- يوجد وسائل مواصلات عامة جيدة ولا يوجد سيارات.
- جميع الخدمات التي يحتاجها الناس قريبة من منازلهم: المحلات و الأسواق والأطباء والمكاتب الحكومية، إلخ.
- يوجد مساحات خضراء للناس لكي يستمتعوا.

When you are designing a smart growth plan, you should make sure to plan the following:

- عند تصميم خطة نمو ذكي ينبغي أن تتأكد من التخطيط لـ:

1. Housing — الإسكان
2. Places of work and schools — أماكن العمل و المدارس
3. Public transportation — المواصلات العامة
4. Green spaces — المساحات الخضراء

Help your child plan a smart growth for a city.

ساعد طفلك على وضع خطة نمو ذكي للمدينة.

Design a smart growth plan to your city.

صمم خطة (نمو/تطوير) ذكية لمدينتك.



My city needs a smart growth plan. I'm trying to help. I have some ideas to improve the lives of people and protect the environment. Building more houses, better schools and wider streets will help people and save their time. Using bikes will help reduce pollution. All the services that people need will be close to their homes. Green spaces will make people feel happy and relaxed. I hope my city will be better.

Answer the following questions.

1. What will help people save their time?

....

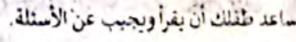
2. What will help reduce pollution?

....

3. How will people feel if there are green spaces?

....

Help your child read and answer.


ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

are - Yes - Where

Asmaa : .... (1) .... do you live?

Jana : I live in Alexandria.

Asmaa : How many people are there in your family?

Jana : There .... (2) .... 5 people.

Asmaa : Do you like Alexandria?

Jana : .... (3) .... , I do.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. should - environment - We - the - protect - .

....

2. good - is - There - transportation - public - .

....

3. walk - work - People - can - to - .

....

4. need - spaces - We - green - .

....

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Alexandria"

Guiding words:

(beautiful - Mediterranean - largest - port)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

city	مدينة كبيرة	population	عدد السكان
village	قرية	location	موقع
congestion	ازدحام مروري	neighborhood	حي سكني
densely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية عالية	buffaloes	جاموس
sparsely populated	ذو كثافة منخفضة	dye	يصبغ / صبغة
inhabitants	سكان	warp	السداة (مد خيوط النسيج)
isolated	منعزل	crafts	حرف
metropolitan	عاصمي	yarn	خيط (غزل)
pedestrians	المشاة	spin	يغزل / ينسج
urban	مدني / حضري	artisan	حرفي
rural	ريفي / قروي	carpet	سجادة
services	خدمات	smart growth	النمو الذكي
traditional	تقليدي		

Plural nouns

We change a noun from singular to plural by adding "s, es, ies"

boy → boys   box → boxes   baby → babies

Subordinating Conjunctions

after	بعد	as soon as	بمجرد أن
although = even though	بالرغم من ذلك	while	بينما / أثناء
so that	لكي	before	قبل
every time	كل مرة		



Help your child revise unit (4).
ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة الرابعة.



Writing Corner

My city

My name is Nada. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city. It's the second largest city in Egypt. More than 5 million people live in Alexandria. It has an important port. There is a lot of industry in Alexandria.

My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Rod-El Farag. There are 4 people in my family: my parents, my brother, Ziad and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either.

Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet, first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

Smart growth

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in it. A smart growth cares for housing, places of work and school, public transportation and green spaces.

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك على كتابة فقرة.

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) I live in a nice ....

a) town b) village c) city d) country

2) It's by the ....

a) Nile b) sea c) lake d) ocean

3) My father is a ....

a) vet b) teacher c) farmer d) carpenter

4) We play .... in the club.

a) football b) tennis c) handball d) basketball

2 Listen and complete.

1) I like my city. We have a lot of ....

2) We can also use the .... to go wherever we want.

3) One of my favorite places is Montaza ....

4) I sometimes visit the gardens with my ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

craft - spinning - traditional - so that

Last summer I really wanted to learn about 1) .... Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a 2) .... and weaving workshop 3) .... I could learn about this 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... spin the wool.

a) artisans b) engineers c) teachers d) carpenters

2. I do my homework .... I can get ready for the next lesson.

a) while b) although c) after d) so that

3. The .... is the structure of the carpet.

a) loom b) dye c) warp d) yarn

4. .... I go to Alexandria, I remember my wonderful holiday there.

a) Every time b) Even though c) While d) Although

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, my name's Fareeda. I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

6 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Rasha is great at English. ( )
2. Zeinab's friends are clever. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lobna .... things all the time and has good ideas.
   a) plays b) invents c) watches d) washes
2. Doha makes amazing ....
   a) art b) videos c) songs d) pictures

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. have - any - Do - sisters - you - ?

....

2. weave - can - Artisans - carpets - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My city"

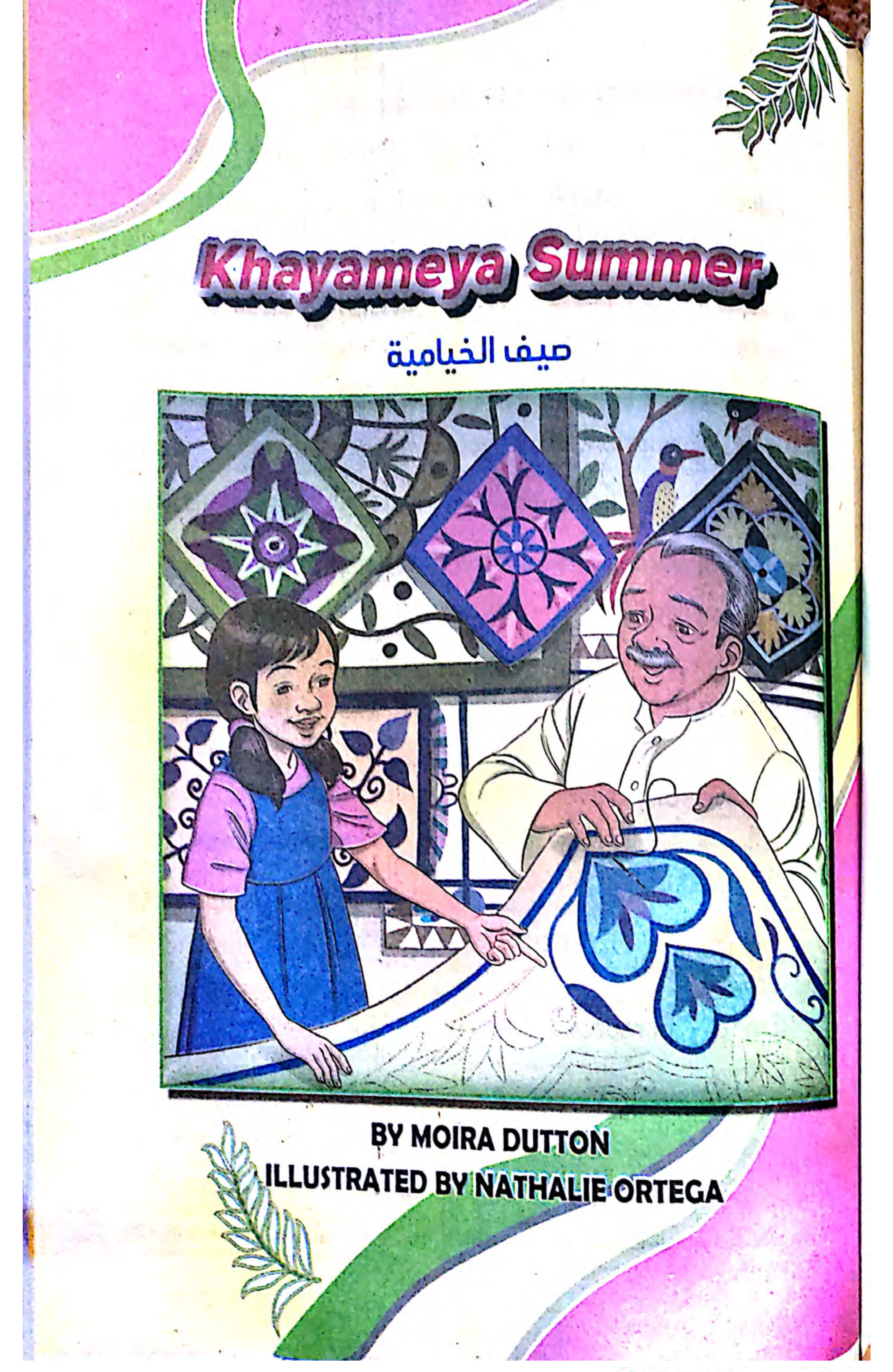
Guiding words:

(Alexandria - Mediterranean - port - beach)

....

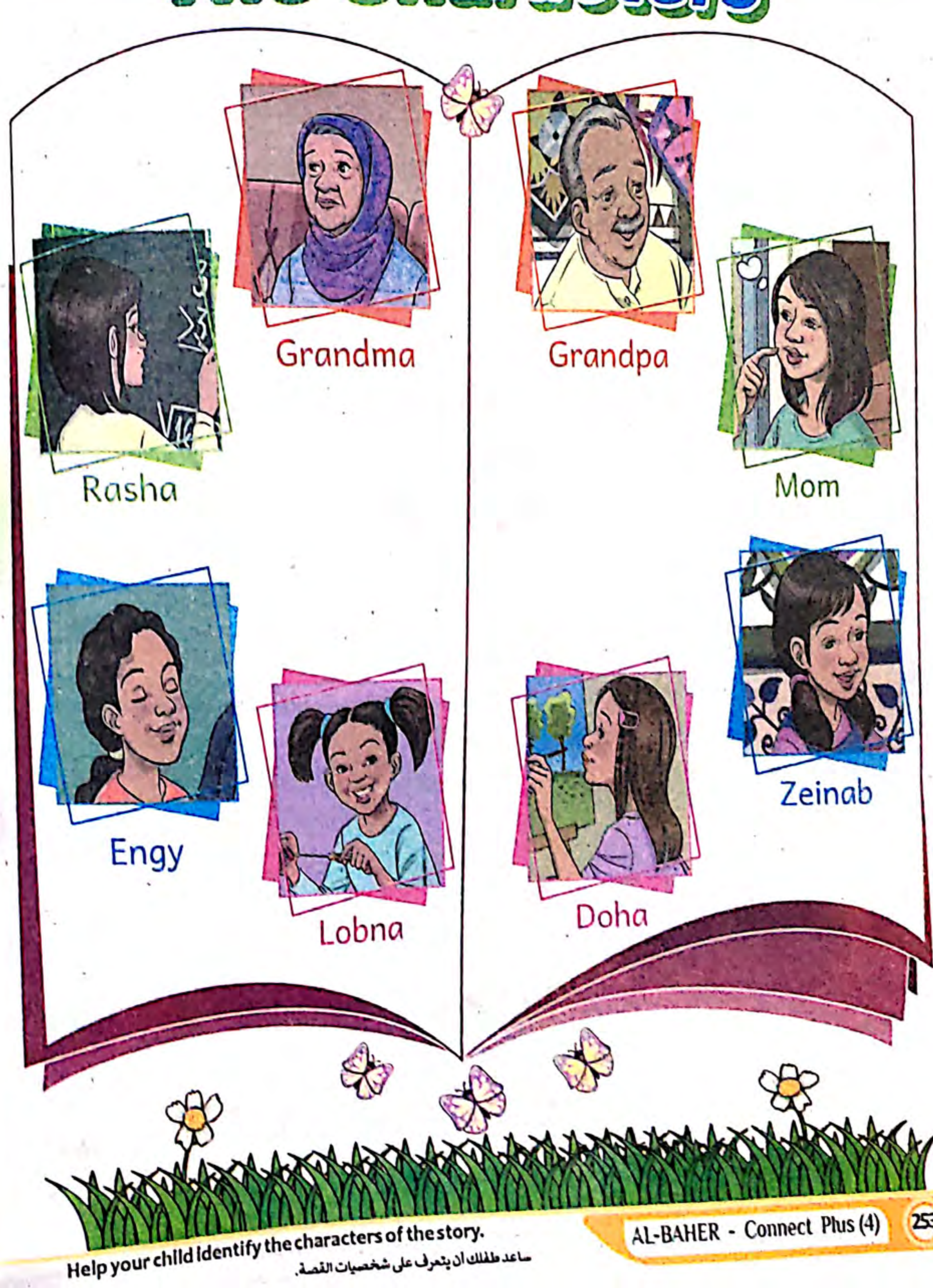
....

....


Khayameya Summer
صيف الخيامية
BY MOIRA DUTTON
ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA

Khayameya Summer

The Characters



Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

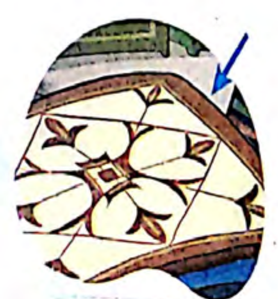
PICTURE DICTIONARY



geometric patterns
أنماط هندسية



artisan
حِرَفِي



layer
طبقة





sew
يخيط

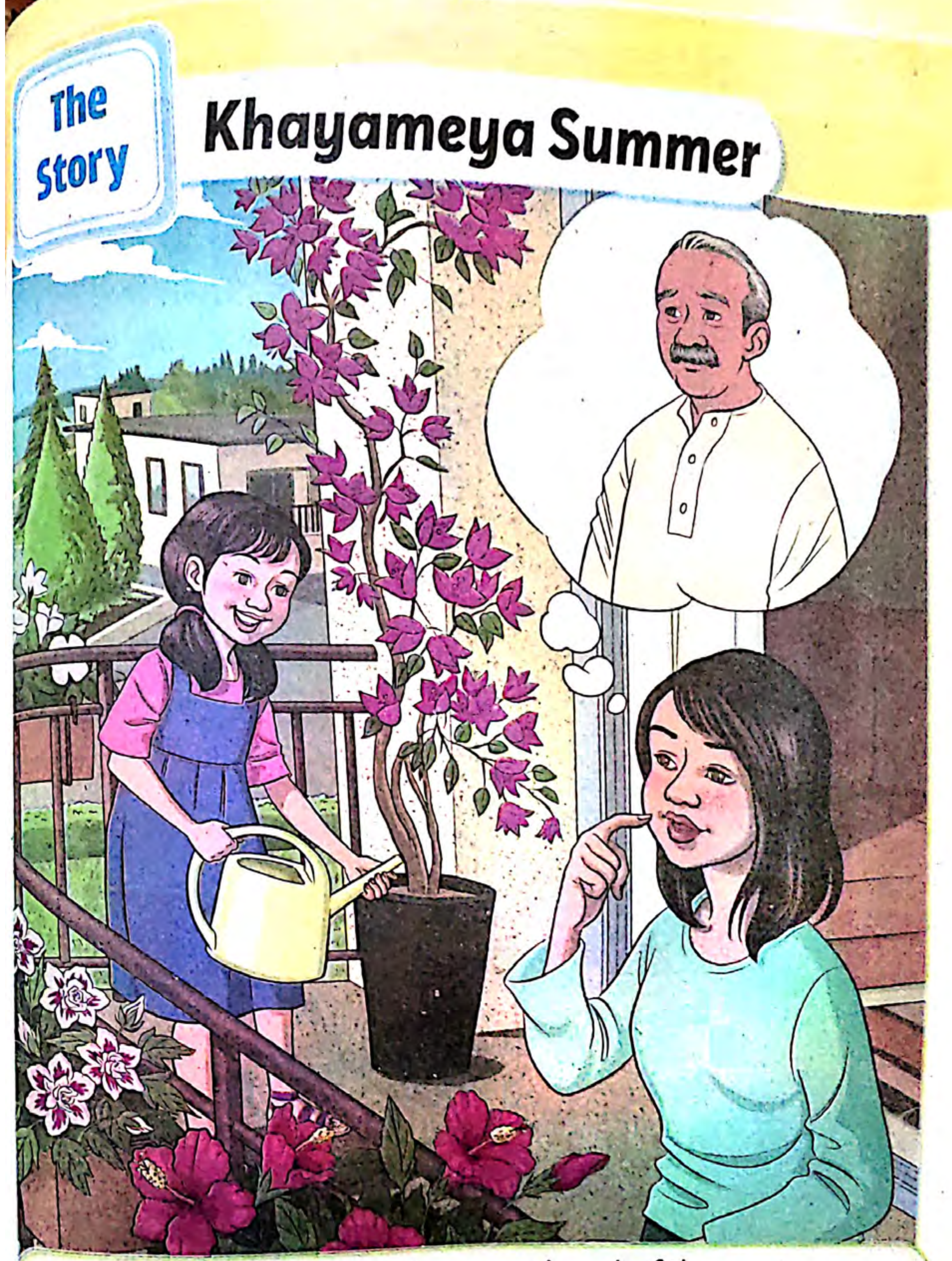


stitch
غرزة



lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس

Khayameya Summer

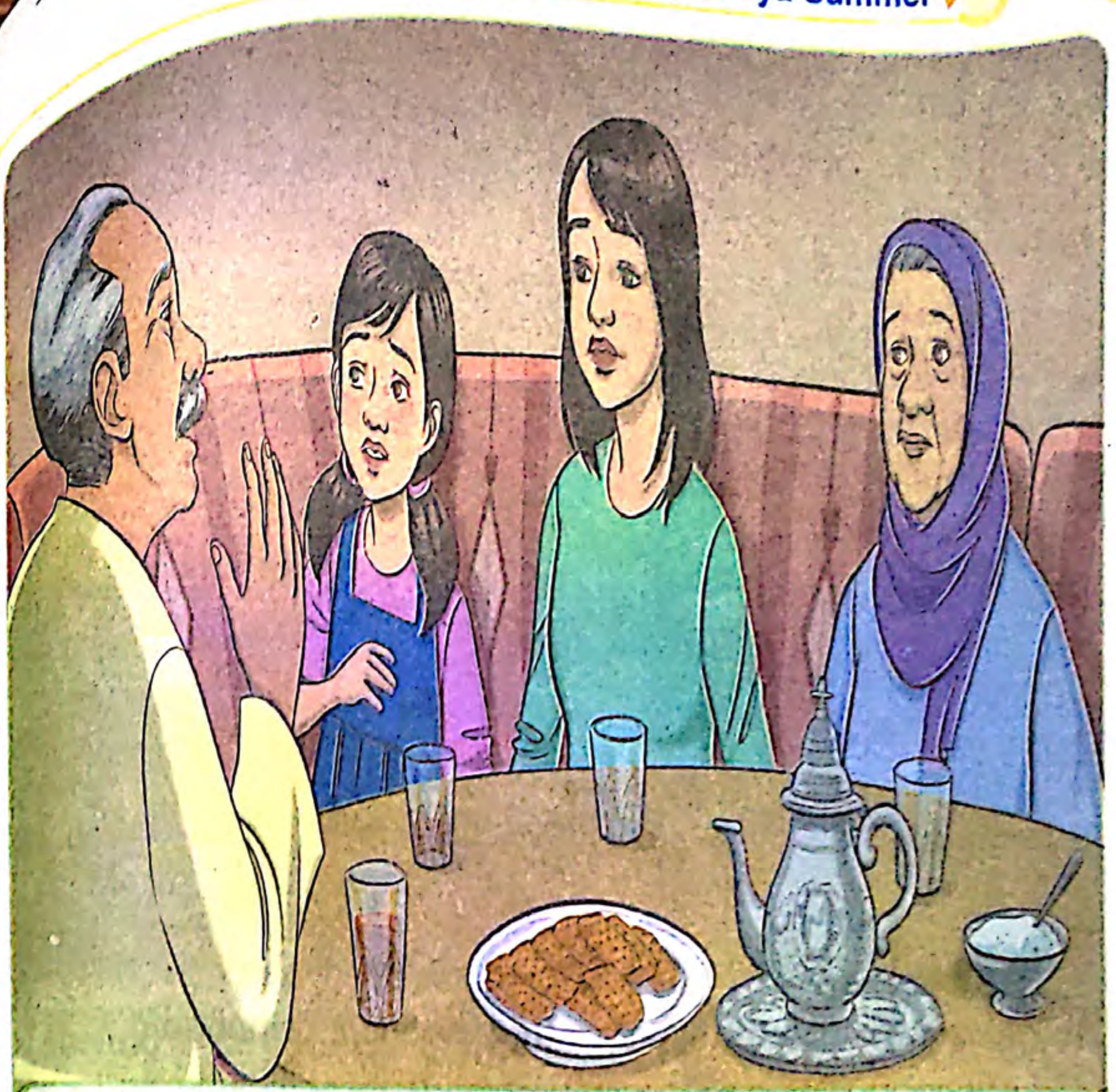


Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday. Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit Grandpa!" Her mother said, "Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him."

كانت زينب تشعر بالملل. إنه في الأسبوع الثاني من الإجازة الصيفية. قالت زينب " هيا نذهب لزيارة جدّنا"، فقالت لها أمها " نعم، فهو يشعر بالحزن في الوقت الحالي. و أعتقد أنه بإمكانك مساعدته."

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.





After tea, Grandpa said, "My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew(1). I think I will have to stop making things." Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans(2) in Khayameya Street. Zeinab said, "Oh no! You can't stop! You make such beautiful things!"

بعد تناول الشاي قال الجد " عيناي ليست على ما يرام الآن. و من الصعب عليّ أن اعمل، فأنا لا أستطيع ان ارى و أنا أخيط ، و أعتقد انه يجب عليّ أن أتوقف عن صنع الأشياء."

كان الجد واحدًا من صناع الخيام. و كان من أفضل الحرفيين في شارع الخيامية. قالت زينب " أوه لا. لا يمكن أن تتوقف! فأنت تقوم بصناعة أشياء جميلة!"

1. يخيط
2. حرفيين



Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop. Zeinab said, "Oh look! I love this big picture with all the flowers! Did you make it, Grandpa?"

"Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches[1]. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand." said Grandpa.

"All by hand? That's amazing!"

زارت زينب و جدها المحل. قالت زينب " أوه انظرا أنا أحب هذه الصورة الكبيرة ذات الزهورا هل قمت بصناعتها يا جدي؟"
قال الجد " نعم، لقد استغرقت ما يقارب الأربعة أشهر و هي مصنوعة من آلاف وآلاف الغرز الصغيرة و قد قمت بقياس وقص كل أجزائها باليد."
قالت زينب " أصنعتها كلها باليد؟ هذا مذهل!"

1. غُرز

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



"What's your favorite design Grandpa?" asked Zeinab. "I like sewing lotus flowers[1] and geometric patterns[2] best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me." "I wish I could sew and help you," said Zeinab. Her grandfather smiled. "I can teach you. Do you want to learn?" "Oh, yes please!" said Zeinab.

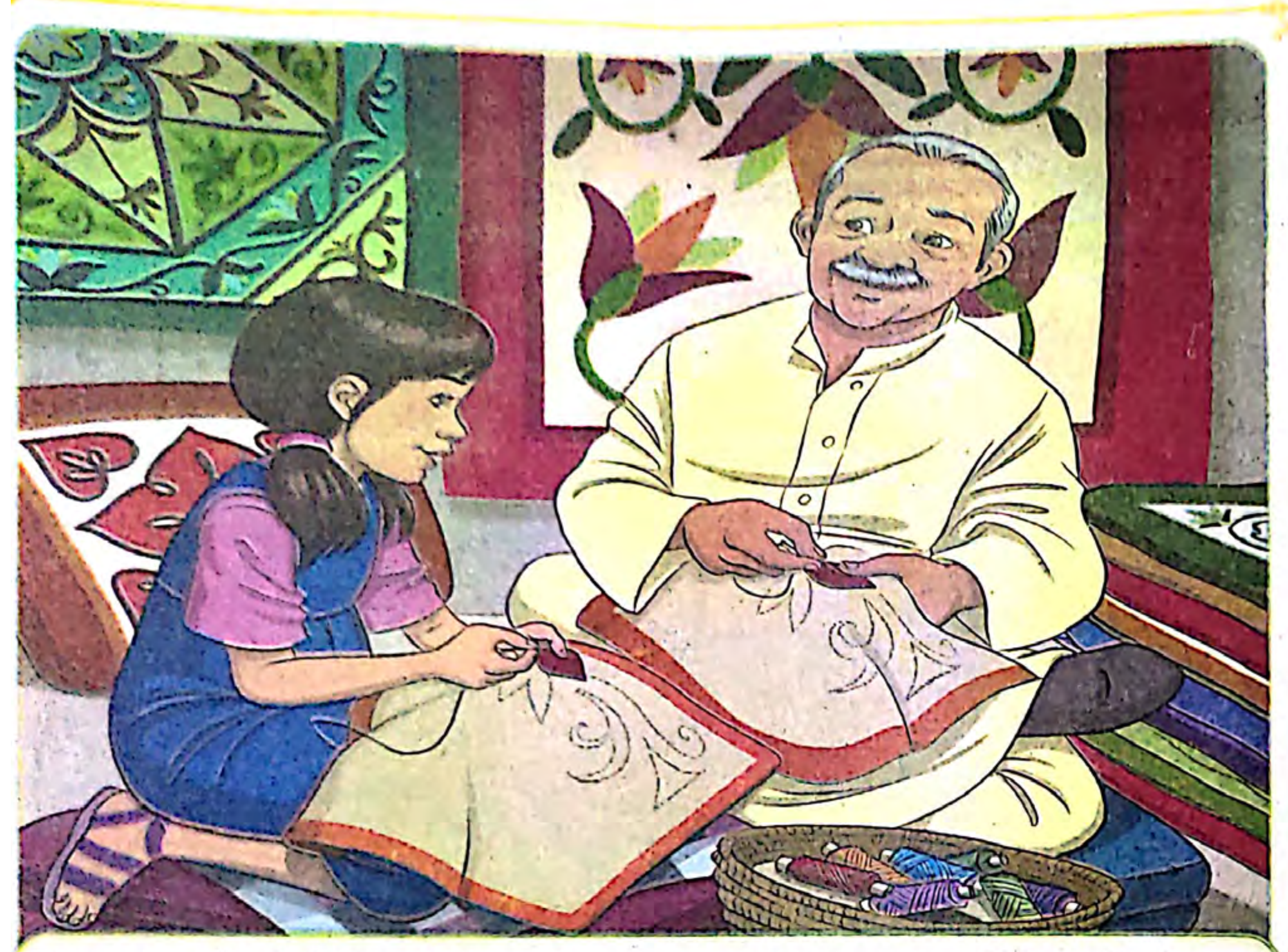
سألت زينب "ما هو تصميمك المفضل يا جدي؟"
قال الجد "أفضل ما أحب تصميمه هو زهور اللوتس و الزخارف الهندسية، وأحب أيضًا خياطة أشكال الطيور.
وقد استخدمت أفضل التطريز في الزخارف ولكن عيوني ليست على ما يرام الآن. و هذا ما يحزنني."
قالت زينب "أتمنى لو أستطيع الخياطة فأساعدك."
ابتسم الجد وقال "أستطيع أن أعلمك، هل تريدين أن تتعلمي؟"
قالت زينب "أوه. نعم من فضلك."

1. زهرة اللوتس 2. (زخارف / أنماط) هندسية

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.





Zeinab asked, "How did you learn to sew, Grandpa?' 'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind[1]. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that! I became a Khayameya artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa. Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math! And now you are my teacher, too".

سألت زينب "كيف تعلمت الخياطة يا جدي؟"
أجاب الجد قائلًا "علمني أبي. عندما كنت طفلًا، أردت أن أكون مهندسًا أو معلمًا، لكن غيرت رأيي. و علمني أبي الخياطة.
و قد علّم جدي أبي قبل ذلك! و أصبحت حِرَفِي خيام و أحب عملي."
قالت زينب "أنت تصمم النماذج وتقوم بقياسها، و تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس و فنان وجيد في الرياضيات!
وأنت معلمي الآن أيضًا."

1. غيرتُ رأيي

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Zeinab was excited. ( )
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa. ( )
3. Zeinab's grandparents were sad to see her. ( )
4. Grandpa's eyes aren't very good now. ( )
5. Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab was ....
   a) bored b) excited c) happy d) interested
2. Grandpa was .... maker.
   a) shoe b) tent c) play d) star
3. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....
   a) bus b) car c) train d) ship
4. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a) sad b) bad c) mad d) pleased
5. Grandpa's eyes are not very .... now.
   a) bad b) worse c) good d) happy
6. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya street.
   a) artisans b) doctors c) actors d) farmers
7. Grandpa likes sewing .... and geometric patterns best.
   a) sunflowers b) lotus flowers c) rose d) corn
8. Zeinab wishes she could .... and help her grandpa.
   a) write b) play c) do d) sew

Zeinab said, "Grandpa, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too. Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things. Let's call them!"

قالت زينب " لدي فكرة يا جدي. إن صديقاتي ماهرات جدًا. و أعتقد أنهن يوددن أن يتعلمن عن الخيامية أيضًا. رشا جيدة في الرياضيات و حل المسائل. و لبنى تخترع الأشياء طوال الوقت و لديها أفكار جيدة. و تقوم ضحى برسومات مذهلة. ويمكن أن تساعدك إنجي في توضيح كيفية الخياطة لنا جميعًا، فهي تقوم بأشياء جميلة. هيا نتصل بهم!"

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.

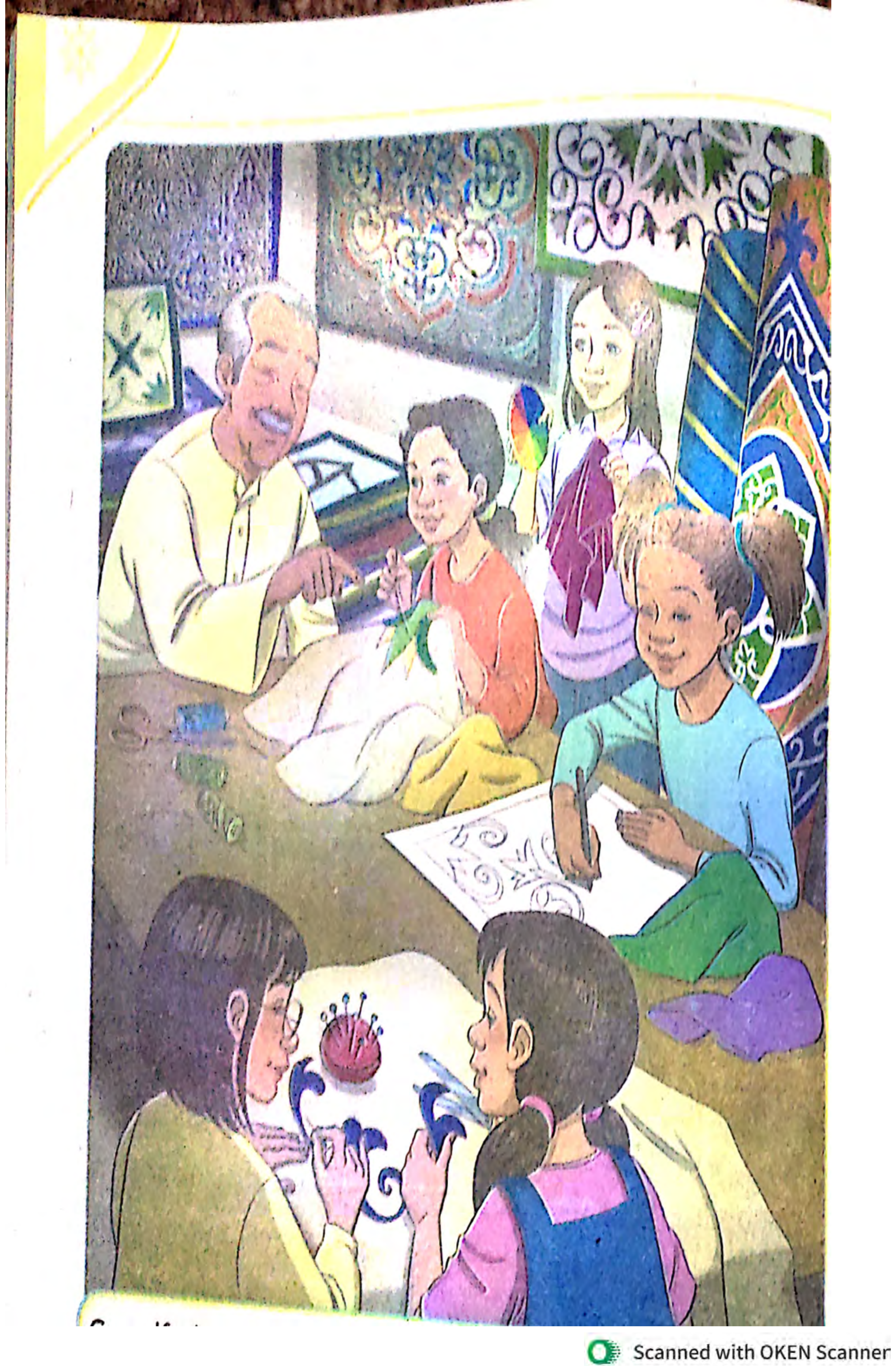




Zeinab's friends arrived. 'We're here! Let's learn something new.' Grandfather said, 'Welcome girls. Thank you for coming! We make the patterns with three layers[1] of cotton and put them together like this ....'

وصل صديقات زينب وقلن "ها قد وصلنا! هيا بنا نتعلم شيئًا جديدًا."
قال الجد "مرحبًا يا فتيات. شكرًا على المجيء! نحن نقوم بعمل الزخارف بثلاث طبقات من القطن ونقوم بوضعها سويًا هكذا ...."

1. طبقات





Other people came to watch. They said, 'That looks fun. Can we try?' Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome! Come and join us!"

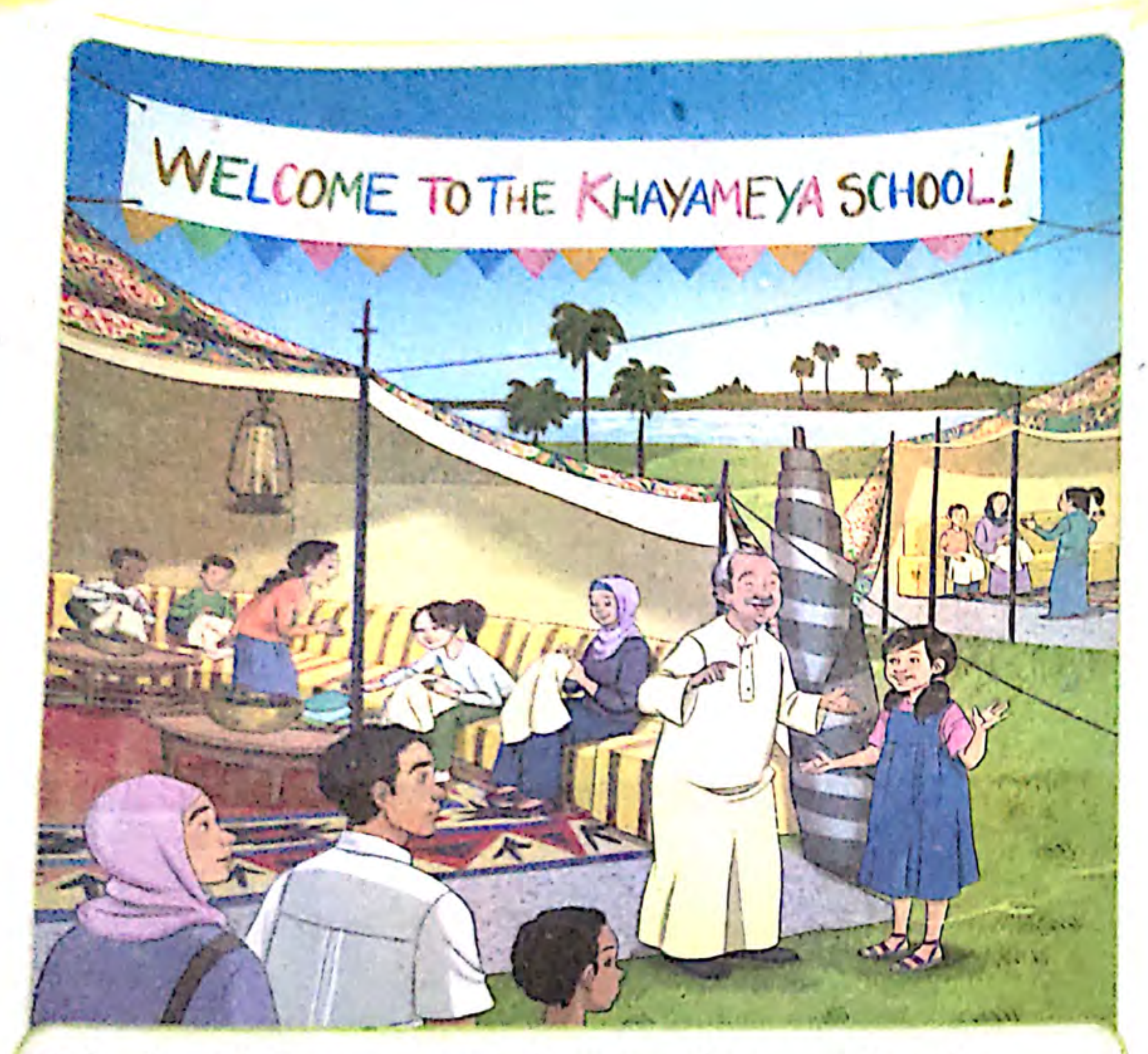
أتى أناس آخرون للمشاهدة، و قالوا " هذا يبدو ممتعًا. هل يمكن أن نجرب؟" قال الجد " مرحبًا! تعالوا و انضموا إلينا!"

Grandpa said, "Zeinab, look at all these people! They all want to learn about Khayameya! I'm so happy!'

قال الجد "يا زينب، انظري إلى كل هؤلاء الناس! كلهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية! أنا سعيد جدًا!"

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



Zeinab said, "Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them. Khayameya School is traveling all summer! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh! What a wonderful summer holiday! Thank you, Grandpa!'

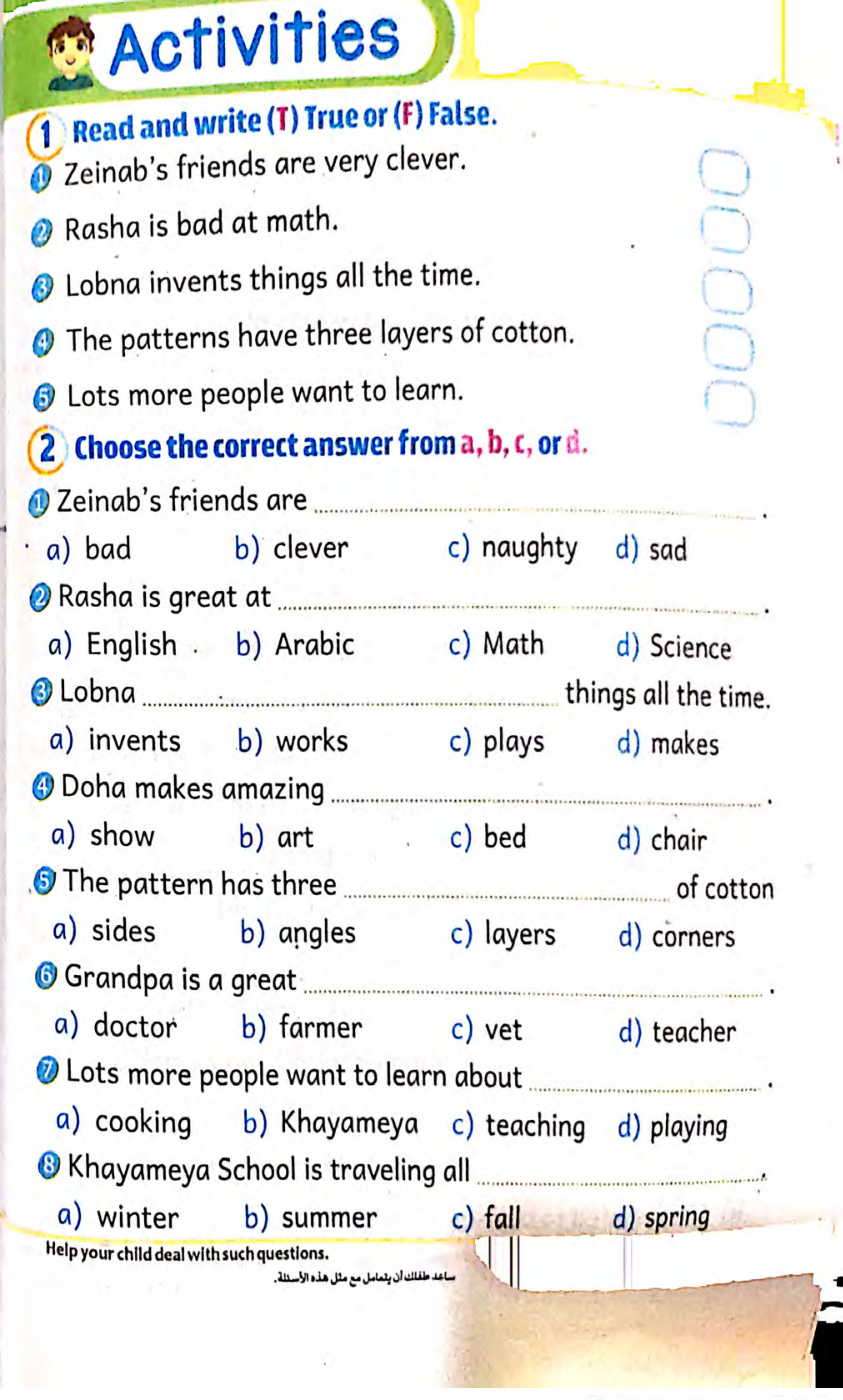
Grandpa laughed, 'No, thank you Zeinab!'

قالت زينب "يرغب الكثير من الناس في التعلم أيضًا. فالناس من أماكن عديدة من أنحاء مصر يريدون أن تعلمهم.
تتنقل مدرسة الخيامية طوال الصيف! سنذهب إلى الإسماعيلية ثم إلى طنطا و مرسى مطروح! يا لها من إجازة صيفية رائعة!
أشكرك يا جدي!"

ضحك الجد قائلًا " لا، بل شكرًا لكِ أنتِ يا زينب!"

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Zeinab's friends are very clever. ( )
2. Rasha is bad at math. ( )
3. Lobna invents things all the time. ( )
4. The patterns have three layers of cotton. ( )
5. Lots more people want to learn. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab's friends are ....
   a) bad b) clever c) naughty d) sad
2. Rasha is great at ....
   a) English b) Arabic c) Math d) Science
3. Lobna .... things all the time.
   a) invents b) works c) plays d) makes
4. Doha makes amazing ....
   a) show b) art c) bed d) chair
5. The pattern has three .... of cotton
   a) sides b) angles c) layers d) corners
6. Grandpa is a great ....
   a) doctor b) farmer c) vet d) teacher
7. Lots more people want to learn about ....
   a) cooking b) Khayameya c) teaching d) playing
8. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a) winter b) summer c) fall d) spring

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete.

artist - flowers - fun - learn - stitches

1. " I love this big picture with all the .... !"
2. "It's made of thousands and thousands of small ....
3. "I can teach you. Do you want to .... ?"
4. "I think you are an engineer, an .... and good at math."
5. "That looks .... Can we try?"

2 Read and choose a or b.

1. Why did Zeinab want to visit Grandpa?

   a) She was worried about him. b) She was bored.

2. Why does Grandpa think he will have to stop making things?

   a) He can't see to sew. b) He is bored with sewing.

3. How did Grandpa make the big picture with the flowers?

   a) He made hundreds of very big stitches.

   b) He measured it and cut the pieces by hand.

4. Who taught Grandpa's father to sew?

   a) His grandmother. b) His grandfather.

5. Why did people start watching Grandpa and Zeinab's friends sewing?

   a) They wanted to learn how to do khayameya.

   b) They wanted to buy some khayameya.



Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

2) Listen and complete.

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

2) Listen and complete.

Braille is a code which people who are blind can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. Blind People can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

Lesson (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are two halves, or hemispheres, in our brain. The left hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

Lesson (4)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

2) Listen and complete.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.



Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs,



except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales.

2) Listen and complete.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't.

Lesson (4)

Listen and complete.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can mix red and yellow to make orange. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

2) Listen and complete.

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

The girls at my running club are my community. We are all from different parts of town. We have lots of friends and families who live in our neighborhood. I think good citizenship is about looking after where you live and being kind to people.

Lesson (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and write. This was a job for scribes. To become a scribe, children went to a special school. The children had to learn lots of different signs and symbols.

Lesson (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Ibrahim, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

2) Listen and complete.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. I live with my family in an apartment.

There are many special things about my community. There are different places, ideas and activities. In our community, we can do many good things.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

2) Listen and complete.

Water lily grows in water and has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored flowers and it makes seeds which float on water. It has roots that spread under the water, and it can cover a very large area.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

Listen and complete.

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated – only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too.

Lesson (2)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. You can see cats in the street.

Lesson (3)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

My grandma and I like natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how the artisans dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There is a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

2) Listen and complete.

I like my city. We have a lot of services. We can use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer.

The water you drink is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Fossil fuels are a non-renewable resource.

Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Crude oil is taken out of the ground and made into petroleum, which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Coal is used to generate electricity.

2) Listen and complete.

Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. When the plants and animals died, they were buried deep inside the Earth. After millions of years, they changed into fossil fuels. When fossil fuels are burned, they create greenhouse gases. They are very bad for the environment. They help to create global warming.

Lesson (3)

Listen and complete.

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to complete your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting upset about problems, be a problem solver.

2) Listen and complete.

Nour works for an engineering company. She likes her job and her team members. She's positive, helpful and kind to everyone. She's always polite, too. She works hard, and tries to find solutions to problems.

Unit (6)

Activities on Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

VR is short for Virtual Reality. You have to wear a special VR headset. It covers your eyes like glasses. There are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

2) Listen and complete.

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS
Final Revision

الصف الرابع الابتدائي الفصل الدراسي الأول



بتصريح وتحت إشراف
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

First Term
Parents' Guide

4th Primary 2024

Unit (1) What can I do?

Vocabulary كلمات

senses	الحواس	stomach	المعدة
tongue (taste)	اللسان (التذوق)	energy	طاقة
nose (smell)	الأنف (الشم)	muscles	العضلات
ears (hearing)	الأذنان (السمع)	brain	المخ
eyes (sight)	العينان (البصر)	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
skin (touch)	الجلد (اللمس)	lungs	الرئتان
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	bone	عظمة
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	liquid	سائل
pump blood	يضخ الدم	organ	عضو (في الجسم)
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	اكسجين
code	شفرة	sign language	لغة الإشارة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

communicate in	يتواصل بلغة	change ... into	يحول .... إلى
breathe in ... through	يتنفس ... من خلال	do something	يفعل شيئًا
be made up of	يتكون من	find out	يعرف / يكتشف
think about	يفكر في	practice football	يمارس كرة القدم
What kind of ....?	ما نوع .... ؟	different from	مختلف عن
make choices	يختار	attached to	متصل بـ
look disappointed	يبدو محبطًا	take place	يحدث

Help your child revise Unit (1). ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.







Present Simple Tense

Usage

We use the present simple to talk about:

- Something that is true. شيء حقيقي.
  - e.g. Cows give us milk.
- Something that happens regularly (habit). شيء يحدث بانتظام (عادة).
  - e.g. I play football every day.

Form

(I / We / You / They / Plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He / She / It / Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies) ...

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Keywords

always	دائمًا	usually	عادة
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا	every (day, week, ...)	كل (يوم ، أسبوع ، ..)
on (Mondays, Fridays, ...)			في أيام (الإثنين ، الجمعة ، ....)

e.g. Adam goes to the park every week.

e.g. Kareem always does drawing.

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our digestive system when we .... and drink.

a) breathe b) think c) eat d) walk

2. We chew food, then it goes to our ....

a) lungs b) heart c) stomach d) teeth

3. The food .... into energy and nutrients.

a) changes b) moves c) uses d) mixes

4. We need energy and nutrients in our ....

a) hair b) clothes c) bodies d) home

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Paralympic .... is an international competition.

a) Puzzles b) Games c) Music d) Plays

2. The Olympics takes place every .... years.

a) four b) five c) three d) two

3. .... is an important area in sports.

a) Football b) Tennis c) Parasports d) Basketball

4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.

a) athletes b) vets c) teachers d) captains

2 Listen and complete.

1. People who are .... or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.

2. Sign language is different in each ....

3. We use our hands, ... and bodies to communicate.
4. People use .... instead of hearing to understand.

Listen and complete.

1. It's fun to play .... games.
2. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your ....
3. People eat unhealthy .... when they are watching TV.
4. Try not to develop unhealthy ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

eyes - senses - hear - five

Toka : How many .... (1) .... do we have?

Nour : We have .... (2) .... senses.

Toka : How can we .... (3) .... ?

Nour : We hear with our ears.

Toka : How can we see?

Nour : We can see with our ....(4) ....

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sign - different - hands - deaf

People who are 1) .... or can't hear well can learn 2) .... language. This is a language in which we use our 3) ...., faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is 4) .... in each country.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The .... are people who can't hear.
   a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
2. .... are attached to our bones.
   a) Muscles b) Lungs c) Skeletons d) Hair
3. Blood is pumped around our body by the ....
   a) bones b) muscles c) stomach d) heart
4. A .... is made up of all the bones in the body.
   a) heart b) muscle c) lung d) skeleton
5. People who are .... can't see.
   a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
6. He came first, so he won the .... medal.
   a) gold b) bronze c) silver d) diamond
7. We use the .... system when we eat.
   a) respiratory b) digestive c) muscle d) skeleton
8. We use the .... system when we breathe.
   a) respiratory b) sense c) blood d) digestive
9. Deaf people use .... language to communicate.
   a) sing b) song c) play d) sign
10. When do the Paralympic Games take ....?
    a) palace b) place c) plus d) police

11. .... protect our organs.
a) Bones b) Stomach c) Skeleton d) Lungs

12. Many athletes take .... in competitions.
a) park b) part c) put d) port

13. We taste with our ....
a) ears b) tongue c) hair d) nose

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. The brain .... the most important organ of the body.
a) are b) have c) were d) is

2. An adult brain .... about 1,400 grams.
a) weigh b) weighs c) win d) weighed

3. The average brain .... 12,000 to 60,000 thoughts a day.
a) does b) has c) have d) had

4. Kareema .... disappointed.
a) looking b) looks c) look d) to look

5. Adam goes to the park .... week.
a) every b) never c) always d) usually

6. Sara always .... drawing.
a) do b) did c) doing d) does

7. Tarek .... two sisters.
a) is b) has c) have d) had

8. Noura .... volleyball on Mondays.
a) is played b) play c) plays d) playing

9. We .... to the beach in the summer.
   a) go b) is going c) goes d) going
10. .... is hungry.
   a) We b) He c) I d) They
11. We .... cookery class.
   a) done b) do c) does d) doing
12. I .... one brother.
   a) has b) have c) had d) is
13. He .... to music every day.
   a) listen b) listens c) listening d) is listened

6 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts, and meat.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. Our brain is about .... water.
   a) 75% b) 57% c) 55% d) 77%
2. Fruit and vegetables have a lot of ....
   a) oil b) petrol c) fiber d) fats

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does a good diet include? ....

4. Why do we need vitamins and minerals? ....

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. wants - tidy - Mom - the - lounge - to - .

....

2. play - We - after - tennis - school - .

....

3. are - They - tired - bored - and - .

....

4. today, - are - What - doing - Mom - we - ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

Guiding words:

(every day - eyes - nose - hear - tongue - touch)

....

....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our respiratory system"

Guiding words:

(breathe - lungs - oxygen - heart - pass)

....

....



Plants and animals

Vocabulary كلمات

Vertebrates	الفقاريات	Invertebrates	اللافقاريات
backbone	العمود الفقرى	crab	سرطان البحر
amphibians	البرمائيات	grasshopper	الجرادة
mammals	الثدييات	dragonfly	اليعسوب
humans	البشر	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
species	أنواع/فصائل	octopus	الأخطبوط
bird	طائر	snail	الحلزون
bat	خفاش	squid	الحبّار
beak	منقار	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
fin	زعنفة	shell	صَدَفة
fur	فرو	spider	عنكبوت
gill	خيشوم	insects	الحشرات
scales	قشور/حراشف	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
whales	الحيتان	reptiles	الزواحف
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feed with	يغذي - يطعم بـ	such as	مثل
give birth to	تلد	take in	يمتص
live on	يتغذى على / يعيش على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
find out	يكتشف	on land	على اليابسة
write about	يكتب عن	in water	في الماء

Help your child revise Unit (2).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives
صفات المقارنة



الاستخدام

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.**

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.



التكوين

adj صفة + er + than.





e.g. The cheetah is faster than the ostrich.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.



1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) إلى الصفة.





e.g. The fish is nicer than the ostrich.

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

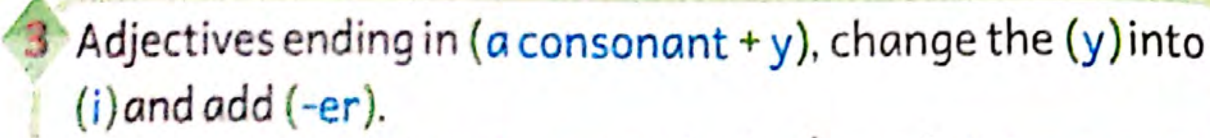
مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.



bigger than →



e.g. The elephant is bigger than the ostrich.



3. Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er



heavier than





e.g. The blue whale is heavier than the elephant.

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل



Usage الاستخدام

- **We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.**

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة.



Form



التكوين

the + adj صفة + est.

small → the smallest

e.g. The ant is the smallest.



Spelling rules



1. Adjectives that end in (- e), only add (-st).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (st-) فقط.

nice → the nicest

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the nicest.



2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3. Adjectives that end in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest sea animal.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb.
It comes after the verb.

الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. Snails move slowly.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + ly

لتكوين الظرف، نضيف (ly) إلى الصفة.

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء | sad حزين → sadly بحزن



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.
   a) Vets b) Doctors c) Engineers d) Scientists
2. People think that chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a) smallest b) highest c) biggest d) tallest
3. The .... is 30 millimeters long.
   a) snake b) elephant c) lion d) chameleon
4. That chameleon is bigger than a .... in Guinea.
   a) cat b) bird c) snail d) frog

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists think that there are 400,000 different types of..............
   a) jobs b) plants c) places d) animals
2. The bright flowers .... insects.
   a) repel b) warn c) describe d) attract
3. .... carry pollen from one flower to another flower.
   a) Plants b) Insects c) Colors d) Trees
4. Plants have .... , which come in many different colors.
   a) animals b) flowers c) trees d) birds

2 Listen and complete.

1. Mammals are warm-...
2. Mammals give birth to their ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. They don't .... eggs.
4. Bats are the only mammals that can ....

Listen and complete.

1. Birds are .... - blooded.
2. All birds have ....
3. Birds lay .... which are hard.
4. Most birds can ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mammals - zoo - animals - elephants

Hassan : Where did you go yesterday?
Omar : I went to the ....(1) ....
Hassan : What did you see there?
Omar : I saw some ....(2) ....
Hassan : Which animal did you like best?
Omar : I liked the ....(3) .... and the monkeys.
Hassan : Are the monkeys ....(4) .... ?
Omar : Yes, they are. They give birth.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Arachnids - backbone - cold-blooded - sea - soft

Invertebrates don't have a 1) .... They are 2) ....
They live in the 3) .... and some live on land. Some have 4) .... bodies and some have hard shells.
5) .... are not insects. They have 8 legs.



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Humans, ... and whales are all mammals.
   a) birds b) dragonflies c) ducks d) lions
2. Birds eat meat, fruit, insects, nuts and........................ .
   a) chickens b) seeds c) gills d) water
3. Birds have .... which are hard and made of bones.
   a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
4. Reptiles have .... They don't have fur or hair.
   a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
5. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a) beaks b) seeds c) gills d) scales
6. Amphibians have smooth skin and live in .... habitats.
   a) moist b) hot c) dry d) noisy
7. Reptiles and amphibians are .... -blooded.
   a) warm b) cold c) hot d) cool
8. Amphibians always lay their eggs in ....
   a) land b) water c) sand d) soil
9. Fish have scales and use their........................ to move.
   a) beaks b) gills c) fins d) scales
10. Mammals are .... -blooded and they feed their babies milk.
    a) boil b) cold c) warm d) hot
11. The biggest land animal is the .... elephant.
    a) Asian b) African c) American d) European

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

12. The elephant is a ....

a) mammal b) reptile c) bird d) arachnid

13. The mammals are ....

a) invertebrates b) vertebrates c) insects d) birds

14. The .... hummingbird is the smallest bird.

a) insect b) duck c) ant d) bee

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. The Asian elephant is .... than the African elephant.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

2. The whale shark is the .... fish in the world.

a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

3. The blue whale is .... than the lion.

a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest

4. The .... bird is the bee hummingbird.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

5. The ostrich is the .... bird.

a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest

6. Ali is .... than his brother.

a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest

7. There is a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. It's the ..... reptile.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

8. Khaled can run .... He is a fast runner.

a) quick b) quickly c) quickest d) slow

9. I can write English paragraphs ....
   a) good   b) well   c) bad   d) sad
10. Elephants are .... land animals in the world.
   a) the biggest   b) bigger than   c) big   d) bigger
11. Snails move very ....
   a) slow   b) slowly   c) slowest   d) the slowest
12. Jellyfish swim ....
   a) the quickest   b) quickest   c) quickly   d) quick
13. Ants are .... than humans.
   a) the strongest   b) strongest   c) stronger   d) strong
14. Insects can find food ....
   a) the easiest   b) easiest   c) easy   d) easily

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors. We can mix red and yellow to make orange. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. There are .... different types of plants.
   a) 400   b) 4,000   c) 40,000   d) 400,000
2. Insects carry .... from one flower to another.
   a) seeds   b) food   c) pollen   d) water



B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the types of colors? ....
4. How can we make orange? ....

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. than - larger - Leopards - cheetahs - are - .

....

2. horses - Ostriches - than - faster - are - .

....

3. are - Sloths - than - giant tortoises - slower - .

....

4. are - the heaviest - Green anacondas - snakes - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Keeping animals at the zoo"

Guiding words:
(advantages - disadvantages - protect - wrong habitats - free)

....

....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Guiding words:
(water - gills - cold-blooded - scales - fins)

....

....

....





My world

Vocabulary كلمات

community	مجتمع	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
neighborhood	الحي السكني	shabbaba	الشبابة
citizenship	مواطنة	simsimeya	السمسمية
village	قرية	ney	الناي
capital city	العاصمة	oboe	أوبو (مزمار)
society	المجتمع	qanun	القانون
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	oud	العود
pharaoh	فرعون	rebaba	الربابة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا
scribe	كاتب	Tahtib	التحطيب
unite	يُوحّد	clapping	التصفيق
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر - الوجه القبلي	Bedouin	بدوى
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	fair way	طريقة عادلة
governorates	محافظات	work hard	يعمل بجد
string instrument	آلة وترية	tourists	سائحون

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write down	يدون / يسجل	work for	يعمل لدى
write in hieroglyphs	يكتب باللغة الهيروغليفية	mix with	يمزج بـ
all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر	lots of	كثير من
home of	موطن لـ	sail on	يُبحر في

Help your child revise Unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.



Possessive (adjectives - pronouns)

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his	+ noun	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	+ noun	hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير العاقل	its	+ noun	----	
We	نحن	our	+ noun	ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your	+ noun	yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their	+ noun	theirs	ملكهم

e.g. - This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- These are your keys. = These keys are yours.

1 تستخدم صفات و ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص لشيء ما.

e.g. This ball is mine. هذه الكرة ملكي.

e.g. This ruler is hers. هذه المسطرة ملكها.

2 ضمائر الملكية غالبا تأتي في نهاية الجملة

e.g. That juice is mine! It isn't yours. ذلك العصير ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.

3
- صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم الشيء المملوك.
- ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.

e.g. This is my car. It's mine. هذه سيارتي إنها ملكي.

e.g. That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

The Past Simple Tense

Form: التكوين:

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

like ⟶ liked | join ⟶ joined | study ⟶ studied

Spelling rules

1 Verbs end in (e), add only (d).

rule ⟶ ruled | move ⟶ moved | use ⟶ used

2 Verbs end in (y) preceded by a consonant, omit (y) then add (ied).

try ⟶ tried | study ⟶ studied | cry ⟶ cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

ليس لها شكل محدد وتحفظ

write ⟶ wrote | is ⟶ was | make ⟶ made

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use past simple tense to express actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. They wrote in hieroglyphs.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس	last (week, month ,...) (الأسبوع / الشهر) الماضي
فترة زمنية + ago منذ	in + تاريخ ماضي (in 2010)

e.g. I studied English yesterday. e.g. We met Ali 2 hours ago.



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A ...... is a group of people who live together in the same area.
   a) neighborhood b) citizenship c) community d) city
2. My community includes my family, my .... , and my school.
   a) brothers b) cousins c) sisters d) friends
3. A good .... is acting in a way that helps your society.
   a) village b) body c) citizenship d) community
4. I am always.. and helpful at school.
   a) happy b) angry c) polite d) good

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... made pictures of musicians playing instruments.
   a) Artists b) Teachers c) Engineers d) Scribes
2. Ancient Egyptians put instruments into ....
   a) schools b) homes c) pyramids d) museums
3. Music was important in .... Egypt.
   a) Lower b) Upper c) Ancient d) Modern
4. .... were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.
   a) Vets b) Musicians c) Players d) Doctors

2 Listen and complete.

1. Egypt has a very long and interesting ....
2. They started to live near the Nile about .... years ago.

3. .... Egypt was in the north.

4. Upper Egypt was in the ....

Listen and complete.

1. Taha lives in ....
2. Alexandria is in the north of ....
3. Lots of ships sail in and out of the ....
4. Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

string - instruments - drumming - Saidi

Tamer : What kind of music do you like?

Adam : I like ....(1)................... music.

Tamer : What ....(2)................... does this type use?

Adam : It uses ....(3)... instruments such as violins.

Tamer : Is ....(4)................... a key part?

Adam : Yes, it is.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

oasis - 440,098 km^2 - Governorate - capital

New Valley 1)........................ is 2)........................ in size. It's very large. The 3)........................ of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an 4)........................ in the south of this region.

5 | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Alexandria and Cairo are ....
   a) governorates b) countries c) villages d) towns
2. New Valley is the .... governorate.
   a) smallest b) oldest c) newest d) biggest
3. Upper Egypt was in the .... of Egypt.
   a) west b) south c) north d) east
4. The Pharaoh Mena .... the north and south to form Egypt.
   a) decided b) divided c) united d) separated
5. .... means behaving in a way that helps your society.
   a) Citizenship b) Friendship c) Sport d) Community
6. .... wrote down everything that happened in Ancient Egypt.
   a) Scientists b) Athletes c) Vets d) Scribes
7. Egypt has many types of traditional .... music.
   a) folk b) modern c) new d) old
8. There are .... governorates in Egypt now.
   a) 20 b) 27 c) 35 d) 37
9. The girls at my music club are my.. .
   a) neigborhood b) citizenship c) friendship d) community
10. Scribes wrote on paper made from .... reeds.
    a) papyrus b) plastic c) paper d) metal
11. The Aswan .... was built in 1970.
    a) High Dam b) Bridge c) Temple d) Pyramids

12. There are .... main parts to the history of ancient Egypt.
    a) three b) four c) five d) six
13. Saidi music uses violins and ....
    a) cellos b) guitars c) oboes d) pianos
14. Scribes wrote in .... in ancient Egypt.
    a) hieroglyphs b) English c) Arabic d) French

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. They're Aya's running shoes. They're ....
   a) he b) she c) hers d) theirs
2. It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's.........................
   a) their b) theirs c) they d) ours
3. It's .... bike. It's yours.
   a) my b) her c) your d) mine
4. Is that your dad's car? - Yes, it's ....
   a) my b) mine c) his d) your
5. It's .... community. It's mine.
   a) my b) mine c) her d) our
6. They're Adam's neighbors. They're ....
   a) his b) he c) him d) her
7. That's your bike. It's ....
   a) his b) theirs c) yours d) mine
8. Scribes .... very important people in Ancient Egypt.
   a) was b) is c) are d) were

9. Where .... you go yesterday?
   a) do   b) are   c) did   d) does
10. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago.
   a) start   b) starts   c) started   d) will start
11. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs.
   a) wrote   b) writes   c) write   d) writing
12. I .... English yesterday.
   a) study   b) studied   c) studies   d) will study
13. It's my house. It's ....
   a) hers   b) ours   c) mine   d) my
14. It .... very hot yesterday.
   a) is   b) was   c) were   d) am

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. Egypt has a long history of traditional ....
   a) carpets   b) sports   c) crafts   d) cars
2. Khayameya patterns have different ....
   a) stores   b) colors   c) shapes   d) lines

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who made Khayameya? ....

4. Where can you buy Khayameya? ....

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. people - in - How many - Cairo - live - ?

....

2. biggest - New Valley - the - is - Governorate - .

....

3. favorite - My - the oud - instrument - is - .

....

4. music - singing - Bedouin - drumming - includes - and - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Your governorate"

Guiding words:

(Giza - pyramids - big - zoo - Nile)

....

....



Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:

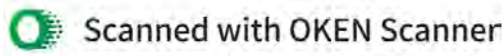
(history - Upper Egypt - Lower Egypt - Mena - Nile)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





City and country

Vocabulary كلمات

city	مدينة كبيرة	loom	نول
congestion	ازدحام مروري	wool	صوف
densely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية عالية	artisan	حرفي
sparsely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية قليلة	carpet	سجادة
inhabitants	سكان	spin	يغزل / ينسج
isolated	منعزل	yarn	خيط (غزل)
metropolitan	عاصمي	weave	ينسج
pedestrians	المشاة	buffaloes	جاموس
traditional	تقليدي	geese	أوز
services	خدمات	sheep	خراف
rural	ريفي	village	قرية
urban	مدني	environment	البيئة
warp	السداة (مد خيوط النسيج)	division	القسمة
dye	يصبغ	fraction	كسر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	tell about	يخبر عن
live in	يعيش في	more than	أكثر من
a lot of	كثير من	pick out	يختار
be going to + inf.	سوف	in the desert	في الصحراء
in an isolated place	في مكان منعزل	close to	قريب من
learn about	يتعلم عن	have to	يجب أن / يضطر إلى

Help your child revise Unit (4).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Plural Forms

صيغ الجمع

A noun can be singular or plural.
To change a noun from singular into plural, we follow some rules.

1 Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers　　sister → sisters

2 Nouns ending in: (o. ch. sh. s. x or z), we add (es)

buffalo → buffaloes　　box → boxes
dish → dishes　　watch → watches

3 Nouns ending in: (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies　　city → cities

4 Nouns ending in: a vowel + y, we add (s).

donkey → donkeys　　boy → boys

5 Irregular plural: The noun changes (There is no rule)

man → men　　woman → women
goose → geese　　child → children

6 Some nouns don't change.

a sheep → sheep　　a deer → deer
a fish → fish

Note:

يُسبق الاسم المفرد بـ a او an



Subordinating Conjunctions
روابط التتابع

After
بعد
لربط فكرتين متتاليتين

e.g. After I went to the park, I met my cousin.

Before
قبل

e.g. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it.

as soon as
بمجرد أن

e.g. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

so that
لكي
لبيان الغرض أو السبب

e.g. My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshops so that I could learn about this craft.

although = even though
بالرغم من ذلك
لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

While
بينما - أثناء
لربط حدثين في نفس الوقت

e.g. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave.

Every time
كل مرة

e.g. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina lives in ....
   a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Luxor
2. Alexandria is a/an .... on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a) town b) oasis c) city d) village
3. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a) third b) fourth c) second d) first
4. Alexandria has an important ....
   a) lake b) river c) port d) ship

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina has a big ....
   a) park b) school c) family d) group
2. Dina is .... years old.
   a) 10 b) 11 c) 12 d) 13
3. There are a lot of .... in Alexandria.
   a) schools b) services c) banks d) streets
4. Dina and her family visit Montaza Palace once a ....
   a) year b) month c) week d) day

2 Listen and complete.

1. I live in Greater ....
2. Greater Cairo is a .... populated area.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. There are more than .... million inhabitants.

4. There are a lot of cars so there's also ....

Listen and complete.

1. The .... is structure of the carpet.
2. They make the warp using spun Egyptian ....
3. The .... make the carpets by hand.
4. They make beautiful geometric ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

artisans - workshop - much - enjoy

Noura : Where did you go yesterday?

Amira : I went to a spinning and weaving .... (1) ....

Noura : Who explained how the ...... (2) .... make the carpets?

Amira : The guide at the workshop.

Noura : Did you .... (3) .... your visit?

Amira : Yes, I enjoyed it very .... (4) ....

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dye - guide - workshop - Artisans

Last week, we went to a carpet 1)........................ . The 2)........................ explained everything to us. 3)........................ use yarn to make carpets. First, they have to wash the yarn and dry it. Then, they 4)........................ it with natural colors.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. About 700 people live in a ....
   a) country b) city c) village d) town
2. Wool comes from ....
   a) cows b) horses c) goats d) sheep
3. Aswan is on the .... Nile.
   a) River b) Lake c) Sea d) Ocean
4. Greater Cairo has more than 20 million ....
   a) inhabitants b) animals c) cars d) birds
5. .... spin wool to make it into yarn.
   a) Vets b) Artisans c) Doctors d) Teachers
6. The .... at the carpet workshop explained everything.
   a) farmer b) vet c) engineer d) guide
7. The artisans make ....
   a) carpets b) medicines c) trains d) cars
8. I live in Greater Cairo. It is a .... area.
   a) metropolitan b) village c) rural d) city
9. Alexandria is a .... populated city.
   a) few b) densely c) sparsely d) little
10. An oasis is in the desert so it is a/an .... place.
    a) urban b) isolated c) densely d) rural
11. A warp is used to make ....
    a) paper b) wool c) carpets d) cotton

12. Farmers keep animals like ....

a) buffaloes b) ducks c) geese d) ants

13. .... have to be careful while crossing the road.

a) Pedestrians b) Drivers c) Pilots d) Doctors

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. Tamer couldn't eat .... he was hungry.

a) although b) after c) before d) while

2. I watched my children .... they played in the park.

a) while b) so that c) even though d) although

3. I finished my homework .... I was tired and had a headache.

a) even though b) while c) so that d) before

4. Laila is studying English .... she can be a journalist.

a) every time b) so that c) though d) while

5. .... we go to Alexandria, I remember our holiday there.

a) While b) Every time c) Though d) Before

6. Dina ran upstairs to see her sister .... she got home.

a) after b) though c) while d) before

7. They ran inside .... it started raining.

a) so that b) as soon as c) though d) while

8. We chatted with our friends .... we waited for the bus.

a) though b) so that c) while d) although

9. .... my sister hears this song, she dances.

a) Although b) Every time c) So that d) While

10 Dad bought a laptop .... he could work at home.

a) so that b) while c) after d) before

11 The audience didn't wait long .... the concert started.

a) even though b) so that c) before d) although

12 We had to chop vegetables .... we cooked them.

a) after b) before c) while d) so that

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week my father took me to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide there explained everything to us. He showed us the warp which is the structure of the carpet. Artisans there are very clever. They make beautiful carpets. First, they wash the yarn. Then, they dry it. After that, they dye the yarn using natural colors. I learnt many things there and I enjoyed my time too.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Artisans wash the ....

a) warp b) yarn c) clothes d) loom

2 The warp is the structure of the ....

a) carpet b) curtain c) cloth d) sheet

B) Answer the following questions.

3 When did you go to the workshop?

....

4 Who explained everything to you?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make - carpets - Artisans - beautiful - .

....

2. before - We - chop - vegetables - them - cook - we - .

....

3. sleep - Habeba - although - tired - couldn't - was - she - .

....

4. animals - farm - We - have - our - on - a lot of - .

....

5. from - the - The wool - sheep - is - collected - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Carpet making"

Guiding words:
(traditional - wool - artisans - yarn - vegetable dyes - loom)

....

....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Your city"

Guiding words:
(Sharm El-Sheikh - beautiful - services - malls - sparsely)

....

....

Unit (5) Resources in our world

Vocabulary كلمات

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	petroleum	بترول
renewable	متجدد	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
non-renewable	غير متجدد	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
coal	الفحم	run out	ينفد
metal	معدن	turbine engineer	مهندس توربينات
mineral	معدن	solution	حل
plastic	البلاستيك	share	يشارك
soil	التربة	career	حياة مهنية
stone	الحجر	experience	خبرة
wood	الخشب	promotion	ترقية
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	skill	مهارة
crude oil	البترول الخام	talent	موهبة
wave power	طاقة الأمواج	train	يتدرب / يتمرن
wind power	طاقة الرياح	responsible	مسؤول
tidal power	طاقة المد و الجذر	metropolitan	عاصمي (متعلق بالعاصمة)
solar power	طاقة شمسية	supportive	مؤيد / داعم
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	application	طلب التقدم لوظيفة
electrical energy	طاقة كهربية	member	عضو
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
oil well	بئر نفط		



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

use ...... for	يستخدم .... لـ	types of	أنواع من
look around	ينظر حول	made up of	يتكون من
use up	يستهلك	be made of	مصنوع من
turn into	يتحول إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
around the world	حول العالم	around 80%	حوالي ٨٠ ٪
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	look after	يعتني بـ
next to	بجوار	come from	يأتي من

Present Simple "with the third person singular"

زمن المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر المفرد الغائب

Form: He / She / It / Singular noun + verb + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He wakes up at seven o'clock. e.g. She catches the bus to go home.

Spelling rules:

1- With most verbs, we add (s)

معظم الأفعال نضيف لها (s).

drink → drinks help → helps

2- Verbs that end in (s, z, ch, sh, x, o), we add (es)

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ(s, z, ch, sh, x, o) نضيف لها (es).

pass → passes watch → watches go → goes

3- Verbs that eng in a (consonat + y), we cross y and add ies

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y وقبلة حرف ساكن، نحذف y ونضيف ies .

dry → dries study → studies

4- Verbs that end in a (vowel + y), we add only (s)

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف متحرك، نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

5- Some verbs change بعض الأفعال تتغير

have → has be → is

Help your child revise Unit (5).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

Possessive adjectives

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
I	my
He (Ali)	his
She (Amira)	her
It (cat)	its
We	our
You	your
They (children)	their



Rules of using possessive adjectives. قواعد استخدام صفات الملكية.

- Use his when the noun is a boy.
- Use her when the noun is a girl.
- Use their when it's not important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl.
- Use their when the noun is plural.



لاحظ أن (No one - Someone) تعامل معاملة المفرد، لكن الضمير الذي يعود عليهما يكون جمعًا (their).





نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from ....
   a) forest b) nature c) people d) school
2. We use .... to construct buildings and bridges.
   a) stone b) plastic c) wood d) soil
3. We get wood from ....
   a) farms b) rivers c) forests d) deserts
4. .... and silver are types of minerals.
   a) Gold b) Stone c) Wood d) Bridge

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mariam studied .... at Cairo University.
   a) engineering b) nursing c) teaching d) farming
2. Mariam worked at a .... farm in Kenya.
   a) cold b) cool c) wind d) hot
3. Mariam is a .... person.
   a) angry b) calm c) tired d) nervous
4. Mariam worked at a turbine factory in ....
   a) Egypt b) Spain c) England d) Kenya

2 Listen and complete

1. Fossil fuels are non-renewable ....
2. .... oil is turned into petroleum.

3. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the ....
4. There are serious .... with fossil fuels .

Listen and complete.

1. Teamwork is very important for the success of a ....
2. You need to .... while working with other members.
3. You should have a .... attitude if things are difficult.
4. You should communicate well with other team ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

gas - fuels - nature - non-renewable

Mennah : Can people make natural resources of energy?
Yara : No, they can't. They come from .... (1) ....
Mennah : What do you know about fossil .... (2) ....?
Yara : They are .... (3) .... resources.
Mennah : What are the kinds of fossil fuels?
Yara : Coal, oil and natural .... (4) ....

4 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

project - train - promotion - career

1. Nadia would like to have a .... in medicine.
2. Ahmed did his science .... on tidal power.
3. After two years, Mr. Ali got a .... to be a senior manager.
4. You will have to .... for two months.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. .... is a renewable resource of energy.
   a) Coal b) Wind c) Oil d) Petroleum
2. Fossil fuels cause global ....
   a) problem b) warning c) wearing d) warming
3. Solar panels turn the energy from the .... into electricity.
   a) sun b) air c) wind d) waves
4. Wind and water are .... resources.
   a) non-renewable b) renewable c) fossil d) solar
5. Solar panels don't work well if the weather is ....
   a) sunny b) hot c) windy d) rainy
6. We take wood from ....
   a) forests b) seas c) rivers d) farms
7. We grow vegetables and fruits in ....
   a) ground b) stone c) soil d) sea
8. Solar panels are ....
   a) unimportant b) cheap c) bad d) expensive
9. Try to find .... to your problems.
   a) pollution b) solutions c) promotion d) population
10. .... is to teach someone to do a job.
    a) Training b) Practice c) Talent d) Career
11. Be happy and stay .... Don't get upset about things.
    a) angry b) noisy c) calm d) rude

12 " .... " is the ability to do something well.

a) Experience b) To train c) Career d) Skill

13 You should .... with your team members.

a) collaborate b) generate c) fight d) ignore

14 " .... " is when you get a higher position.

a) Career b) Promotion c) Talent d) Skill

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 Hana .... up at 7 every day.

a) wake b) wakes c) woke d) waken

2 Lara did .... science project.

a) her b) my c) their d) his

3 Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He .... cars.

a) fix b) fixes c) fixed d) fixing

4 Hany presented .... project to the class.

a) they b) our c) their d) his

5 Magdy .... his answers quickly.

a) to finish b) finishes c) finish d) finishing

6 I visited .... grandma last Friday.

a) mine b) ours c) its d) my

7 Talia sometimes .... TV.

a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

8 Both children presented .... projects.

a) its b) her c) their d) his

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9 Our cat .... a lot of water.
a) drink b) drunk c) drinking d) drinks

10 He was nervous about................................ projects.
a) her b) his c) their d) mine

11 She .... to school at 7:30.
a) go b) gone c) goes d) going

12 No one raised .... hand to ask a question.
a) his b) her c) our d) their

13 Nour .... the dishes every day.
a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed

14 Ali and Ahmed play with .... friends.
a) theirs b) their c) her d) his

6 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are two kinds of natural resources, renewable and non-renewable resources. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Non-renewable resources are things like metal and petroleum. The non-renewable resources have a dangerous problem. The problem is once we have used all of them up. We can't get any more here on Earth.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Renewable resources can be .... replaced.
a) naturally b) normally c) regularly d) quickly

2 .... is non-renewable.
a) Wind b) Sun c) Metal d) Water

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the kinds of natural resources? ....

4. What is the problem of the non-renewable resources? ....

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can't - energy - We - destroy - .

....

2. sunlight - Solar - collect - panels - .

....

3. non-renewable - Fossil - are- fuels - resources - .

....

8 Write an email to apply for a job.

We are looking for solar power engineers. Are you creative? Do you have any experience of working in renewable energies?

Please write to:

Mr. Mahmoud Gamal, Gamal Design and Technology

MahmoudGamal @gmail.com

To: ....

Subject: ....

Dear: ....,

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Unit (6) Let's work

Vocabulary كلمات

transportation	النقل والمواصلات	characters	عناصر / رموز / حروف
air	الجو	search engine	محرك بحث
pipes	أنابيب / مواسير	password	كلمة المرور
rail	السكة الحديد	passphrase	عبارة المرور
roads	الطرق	symbol	رمز
water	الماء	specific	محدد / معين
river ferry	عَبّارة نهرية	browser	متصفح
entrepreneurs	رواد الأعمال	link	رابط
ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	account	حساب
containers	حاويات	podcast	نشرة صوتية
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	career	الحياة المهنية
freight trains	قطارات الشحن	relaxing	مريح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from	يحصل على الماء من	stop for	يتوقف لأجل
travel on a/an	يسافر بـ	have to	يجب أن
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	go along	يسير بمحاذاة
look out of	ينظر للخارج من	do research	يعمل بحث
think about	يفكر في	travel past	يسافر مازاً بـ
learn about	يتعلم عن	come to	يصل إلى
wait for	ينتظر	go through	ينتقل خلال
come back to	يعود إلى	hard work	عمل (جاد / شاق)

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.



Present Perfect Tense
زمن المضارع التام



Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + have
He / She / It / Singular noun + has
+ P.P (التصريف الثالث)

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + haven't
He / She / It / Singular noun + hasn't
+ P.P ....

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)
+ P.P .....?

- Have you ever been on a train?
  - Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.
- Has she ever traveled on a ship?
  - Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Q.W +	have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)	+ P.P .....?
	has + (he / she / it / singular noun)	

Where have you been? I've been to Luxor.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

just تواً - حالاً	already بالفعل	yet حتى الآن - بعد
ever من قبل - سبق	never أبداً	since منذ
for لمدة		

Prepositions of transport
حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

We use (by) with means of transportation.
نستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات.

- by airplane - by bus - by train - by ship - by air - by water

When there is (a, an or the) before the means of transportation, we use: عند وجود فاصل مثل (the ، a ، an) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم.

1. (in) for transportation in which we can't move. (private transportation).
نستخدم in مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها. (المواصلات الخاصة).

- in a taxi - in a car - in our van

2. (on) transportation on which you can move. (public transportation).
نستخدم on مع الوسائل التي يمكننا التحرك فيها (المواصلات العامة)

- on a train - on a bus - on an airplane

Note : on foot ماشيًا على الأقدام



Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use (will + inf.) to make predictions about the future:

نستخدم (will + inf.) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل.

e.g. Children will take a flying taxi to school.

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + (will سوف) + inf.

e.g. Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.

e.g. People will travel to Mars in 2052.

Note:

'll = will

e.g. I will visit my uncle. = I'll visit my uncle.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريبًا
next (week - year - etc..)	(الأسبوع ، العام ،...) القادم	I think	أنا أعتقد ...
in the future	في المستقبل		
in + future time (2030 - 2052)			في + (وقت في المستقبل)

e.g. They will travel to Aswan tomorrow.

e.g. We will travel to the moon in the future.



Negative النفي

Subject + will not (won't) + inf.

e.g. Robots won't drive trains next year.

e.g. My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.

Note:

won't = will + not

Interrogative الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Will + subject + inf. ......?

- Will you travel to the moon one day?
  - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.
- Will he go to school tomorrow?
  - Yes, he will. - No, he won't.

Wh-question

Question word + will + subject + inf. ......?

- How will you learn English in the future?
  - I will learn English from the internet.
- Where will you live?
  - I will live in a smart city.



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hend looked out of the ....
   a) window b) taxi c) door d) car
2. Hend was in her .... house.
   a) grandpa's b) family's c) uncle's d) aunt's
3. The ships were so ....
   a) wide b) bad c) big d) small
4. Hend often watched the ships with her ....
   a) mom b) parents c) friends d) dad

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can .... goods by water over long distances.
   a) help b) plan c) fill d) transport
2. Ships move ....
   a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) carefully
3. .... can carry heavy items.
   a) Bikes b) Airplanes c) Planes d) Ships
4. Airplanes are .... than ships.
   a) heavier b) faster c) cheaper d) slower

2 | Listen and complete.

1. There are ancient Temples in the Valley of the ....
2. I always wanted to go there because I love ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

3) We stopped for .... and dinner in different towns.

4) It was really .... !

2 Listen and complete.

1) .... engineers design autonomous machines.

2) They test the ....

3) We will use robots to build new ....

4) The robots will do jobs that are too ...... or difficult for humans.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

plane - will - bus - drives

Ahmed : How do you go to school?

Sara : I go to school by .... (1) .... What about you?

Ahmed : My father ....(2) .... me to school.

Sara : Where ....(3) .... you spend the holiday?

Ahmed : In Aswan. We will go there on a .... (4) ....

Sara : Have a nice time.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

safe - Experience - technology - Designer

There are a lot of tech jobs. One of them is a UX 1)................ . UX is short for User 2)...................... . UX Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the 3).................... that you use. They make sure that it is 4).................... and useful for all users.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The government will send water to the cities through ....
   a) roads b) pipes c) air d) trains
2. Going by .... is more comfortable than driving.
   a) bike b) rail c) pipes d) road
3. The ancient Egyptians sent most of their goods by .... on the River Nile.
   a) rail b) plane c) air d) water
4. The best way to get from the suburbs to the center of the city is by ....
   a) pipes b) road c) air d) water
5. We will use autonomous.............................. to do dangerous jobs.
   a) machines b) cars c) trains d) doctors
6. We will use high-speed .... in the future.
   a) ships b) bikes c) trains d) vans
7. A .... is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites.
   a) search engine b) browser c) keyboard d) link
8. You can use a .... to look at web pages on the internet.
   a) browser b) password c) link d) search
9. I'm doing some... for my science project.
   a) research b) browsers c) options d) lines
10. Use more than 8 .... when making a password.
    a) characters b) sentences c) words d) numbers

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

11. Use the .... search option in the browser.
   a) dangerous   b) bad   c) unsafe   d) safe

12. Ships go along the Suez.. .
   a) River   b) Lake   c) Sea   d) Canal

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. People will .... to the moon for holidays.
   a) go   b) gone   c) going   d) goes

2. We .... drive cars that use petroleum.
   a) not will   b) will no   c) aren't   d) won't

3. There .... a personal robot at home.
   a) are   b) be   c) am   d) will be

4. People won't .... fossil fuels to heat their houses.
   a) using   b) used   c) uses   d) use

5. Will you go to university? Yes, ...
   a) will you   b) I will   c) I won't   d) you will

6. All buildings .... solar panels on their roofs in the future.
   a) has   b) have   c) having   d) will have

7. People .... watch the news on television.
   a) isn't   b) won't   c) hasn't   d) doesn't

8. We will .... a space station on Mars.
   a) had   b) have   c) has   d) having

9. Will you learn to drive a car? No, I ....
   a) am   b) will   c) am not   d) won't

10. There .... self-driving cars in the future.

a) are b) am c) will be d) be

11. .... people live on the moon one day?

a) Have b) Are c) Will d) Does

12. Robots will .... airplanes in the future.

a) fly b) flies c) flew d) flying

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.

First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. Ships move ....

a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) badly

2. It's good to transfer fresh food by ....

a) ships b) cars c) airplanes d) trains

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can we transport goods long distances? ....

4. What is used for carrying oil and water? ....

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. never - plane - I've - by - traveled - .

....

2. friends - Don't - your - tell - passwords - your - .

....

3. fly - Robots - will - the future - in - airplanes - .

....

4. live - moon - Will - the - on - people - ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being safe online"

Guiding words:

(Internet - password - friends - information - option)

....

....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Transportation"

Guiding words:

(air - water - road - rail - goods - ships)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
is	يكون	was	know	يعرف	knew
are	يكونوا	were	lay	تضع (البيض)	laid
become	يصبح	became	let	يدع - يسمح	let
burn	يحرق	burnt	make	يصنع	made
build	يبني	built	meet	يقابل	met
choose	يختار	chose	put	يضع	put
catch	يمسك	caught	run out	ينفد	ran out
come	يأتي	came	run	يجري	ran
drive	يسوق - يقود	drove	hide	يختبئ - يخفي	hid
do	يفعل	did	tell	يخبر	told
draw	يرسم	drew	take	يأخذ	took
drink	يشرب	drank	take part	يشارك	took part
go	يذهب	went	spin	يغزل - ينسج	spun
eat	يأكل	ate	sit	يجلس	sat
feel	يشعر	felt	say	يقول	said
fly	يطير	flew	see	يرى	saw
feed	يطعم	fed	smell	يشم	smelt
find	يجد	found	swim	يسبح	swam
get	يحصل على	got	sing	يغني	sang
give	يعطي	gave	wake	يستيقظ	woke
grow	يزرع	grew	wear	يرتدي	wore
hear	يسمع	heard	write	يكتب	wrote
have	يمتلك	had	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

إدارة كوم حماده التعليمية (1)

1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Physical activity is .... for you body.

   a) bad b) good c) silly d) ugly

2. Physical activity makes our .... strong.

   a) muscles b) ears c) noses d) lungs

3. It helps us use up the .... we get from food.

   a) groceries b) calories c) vitamins d) protein

4. .... activities are good for our brain.

   a) Dental b) Mental c) Free d) Head

2 | Listen and complete.

1. .... is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.
2. A community is more than your .... or your family.
3. It is a .... of people, places, activities, and ideas.
4. My community includes my family, my .... and my school.

3 | Read and complete the text with words from the box.

team - food - in - took

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He 1) .... part in the Rio Paralympics, where the 2) .... won bronze. He has played with his team 3) .... Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions in Egypt.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Hana. My sister's birthday is tomorrow. I don't have money so I think it is better to make her a special present. My sister likes toys, but she broke her doll last week. The doll is in her room, so I took the doll and started to fix it. I made a new pink dress to the doll as my sister likes pink colour. I used some cotton to make the doll's hair. The doll looks beautiful. My sister is happy now. She has a beautiful doll.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. My sister likes ....
   a) skulls b) sweets c) skirt d) dolls
2. Hana's sister is .... with her birthday present.
   a) ill b) upset c) happy d) sad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When is Hana's sister's birthday? ....
4. What did Hana fix for her sister? ....

5 The Reader

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was bored. [ ]
2. Zeinab went to her grandparents by bus. [ ]

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was the second week of the ....
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
2. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya street.
   a) footballer b) teachers c) artisans d) bakers



6 | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam .... to the park every week.

a) go b) goes c) went d) going

2. We usually.. football after school.

a) played b) plays c) playing d) play

3. He .... the army yesterday.

a) joined b) joins c) join d) joining

4. Prince Charles .... a king.

a) becomes b) became c) become d) to become

7 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. folk music - lots - Egypt - has - traditional - of - .

....

2. our nose - through - We - breathe - air - in - .

....

8 | Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"A visit to the zoo"

Guiding words:

(zoo - last week - family - car - saw - animals - birds - played - lunch - came back)

....

....

....

إدارة محافظة الإسكندرية (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system to digest food.
   a) nervous b) digestive c) urinary d) respiratory
2. We chew food with our ....
   a) tongue b) teeth c) lips d) eyes
3. In the .... , the food mixes with a special liquid.
   a) heart b) nose c) stomach d) leg
4. The liquid changes the food into ....
   a) energy b) oil c) milk d) protein

2 Listen and complete.

1. Mona is in grade ....
2. Mona's father is ....
3. Mona likes .... and drawing.
4. Every .... , she goes to the club.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fruits - water - green - villages

In the past, life was very difficult. People lived in small 1).................... . They worked hard. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They grew many 2).................... and vegetables. Today, they live a good life. There is enough water. Farmers plant trees and flowers to make the land 3)....................

4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

The zoo is one of the most interesting places for young children. They can see animals from different countries. Some people do not like zoos. They think that it is bad to keep animals in cages. Other people think that if the cage is large, the animals will be happy. In the zoo, animals have enough food. Small animals are safe. Large animals like tigers, lions and elephants are unhappy in cages because they are used to wide, open places. Most children enjoy visiting the zoo. They usually prefer to look at large animals, but some of them are very unkind.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The .... is an interesting place for young children.
   a) zoo b) hospital c) market d) mall
2. In the zoo, small animals are ....
   a) angry b) unhappy c) safe d) unsafe

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can children see in the zoo? ....
4. Why are large animals unhappy in the zoo? ....

5 The Reader

A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates. ( )
2. Coral reefs do not need sunlight to live and to grow. ( )

B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tropical fish can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of ....
   a) camouflage b) sport c) system d) food
2. The Red Sea coral reef is the ...... coral reef system in Africa.
   a) youngest b) largest c) smallest d) fastest

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a) bigger b) biggest c) big d) fastest
3. This is our school. It's ....
   a) we b) us c) ours d) our
4. Mena was the pharaoh who .... the two parts of Egypt.
   a) unites b) unite c) united d) uniting

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. don't - insects - Why - write - you - about - ?

   ....

2. take - oxygen - Fish - through - in - gills - .

   ....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Having a pet"

Guiding words:

(watch - look after - species - walk - exercise - expensive)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



(3) إدارة محافظة دمياط

1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The human body is made up of a number of .... systems.
   a) different b) nervous c) some d) same
2. The respiratory system helps us to ....
   a) taste b) breathe c) digest d) eat
3. Each system is made up of ....
   a) organs b) bodies c) dots d) sounds
4. The stomach is part of the .... system.
   a) respiratory b) circulatory c) digestive d) productive

2 | Listen and complete.

1. The giraffe is the .... of all animals.
2. The giraffe's eyes are .... and soft.
3. The .... is the home of the giraffe.
4. The giraffe lives a simple .... there.

3 | Read and complete the text with words from the box.

together - shares - positive - problem

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. The best teamwork is that where each person 1).................. ideas and skills. When you're working in a team, make sure to listen to others' ideas. You should be a 2).................. solver when there is a problem. Remember to complete your part of the project. Be 3).......... and help the other team members to be more successful.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Computers are very important in the world of modern technology. People can use them in many ways. They can book tickets, buy goods and sell things. Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports. At homes, computers can answer telephones and e-mails. By using computers people can save time. Although computers have many advantages, they also have some disadvantages. Young children use computers to play games for long hours. Sitting still isn't good for their health. It can destroy their eyes and their bones.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) homes b) teachers c) reports d) computers
2. The underlined word "destroy" in the text means ....
   a) hurt b) tell c) answer d) make

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How can people use computers at school? ....
4. Get one disadvantage of using computers. ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral polyps have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. [ ]
2. Zeinab traveled to her grandparent's house by bus. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The water of the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
   a) warmer b) smaller c) easier d) cooler
2. The Khayameya picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....
   a) problems b) stitches c) ideas d) eyes

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....

a) slow   b) slowly   c) slower   d) slowest

2. People .... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.

a) were starting   b) are starting   c) start   d) started

3. I do my homework .... I'm ready for the next lesson.

a) even though   b) after   c) while   d) so that

4. The children made .... mom a cup of mint tea.

a) her   b) their   c) them   d) theirs

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. grow - use - to - Plants - water - .

....

2. ever - on - Have - traveled - you - a train - ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"A place you would like to visit"

Guiding words:

(bus - food - photos - family - interesting - spend - happy time)

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The largest organ in our body is the ....
   a) head b) brain c) heart d) skin
2. Water can't get through the .... layer.
   a) second b) middle c) bottom d) top
3. Our skin protects us from the ....
   a) sun b) dirt c) germs d) a,b and c
4. The........ layer attaches your skin to your bones and muscles.
   a) bottom b) middle c) top d) first

2 Listen and complete.

1. Heidi is in grade ....
2. The children are at the .... today.
3. Lots of .... from different schools are competing.
4. There are .... in running, jumping and throwing.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

plane - will - bus - drives

Ahmed : How do you go to school?
Sara : I go to school by .... (1) .... What about you?
Ahmed : My father .... (2) .... me to school.
Sara : Where .... (3) .... you spend the holiday?
Ahmed : In Aswan. We will go there on a .... (4) ....
Sara : Have a nice time.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mr. Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Sunday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch, chicken and potatoes. Yesterday it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr. Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant, near the school. He loves the food there.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The weather is sometimes .... in Port Said.
   a) rainy b) sunny c) cloudy d) hot
2. The underlined word "there" refers to ....
   a) school b) restaurant c) home d) Port Said

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Mr. Taha work? ....
4. Why did Mr. Taha have lunch at the restaurant? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral polyps move from a place to another. [ ]
2. Grandfather thanked the girls for coming. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Coral reefs are made from thousands of ....
   a) invertebrates b) reptiles c) plants d) spiders
2. The Red Sea coral is the ...... largest reef system in the world.
   a) first b) second c) third d) forth

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sometimes people .... unhealthy snakes.
   a) is eating b) eat c) eating d) eats
2. The .... animal on the land is a mammal.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest
3. Wael .... only one sister. She is pretty.
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
4. She likes the job .... the work is hard.
   a) before b) after c) so that d) although

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. don't - invertebrates - Why - write - you - about - ?

....

2. develop - not - Try - to - habits - unhealthy - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Human body"

Guiding words:

(Human body - 206 bones - strong - hard - not heavy - foods - good for you - bad)

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are a lot of sports in ....
   a) England b) Egypt c) China d) USA
2. I'm good at playing ....
   a) football b) basketball c) volleyball d) tennis
3. I love watching football matches on ....
   a) smartphone b) computer c) TV d) radio
4. I am not good at playing ....
   a) football b) squash c) volleyball d) tennis

2 Listen and complete.

1. Our school uniform is ....
2. We wear a white .... and blue trousers.
3. We have to wear a .... tie.
4. In summer we can wear blue ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

west - Pyramids - Governorate - visit

Ahmed : Where do you live?

Aysel : I live in Giza .... (1) ....

Ahmed : Where is it?

Aysel : It's .... (2) .... of Cairo, and it's a large area.

Ahmed : What places can I .... (3) .... there?

Aysel : You can visit the .... (4) .... and the Sphinx.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to plants such as ....
   a) sunflower b) water lily c) orange d) water
2. The water lily has a .... , flat leaf.
   a) small b) thin c) tiny d) large

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do most plants grow? ....
4. Where do the roots of the water lily spread? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T(True) or F(False).

1. Zeinab visited her uncle. ( )
2. Rasha is good at math. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab was ....
   a) happy b) interested c) excited d) bored
2. Zeinab's friends are ....
   a) clever b) bad c) naughty d) sad

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I do my homework .... I go to bed.
   a) while b) after c) as soon as d) before
2. Sloths are .... than tortoises.
   a) slow b) slower c) slowest d) the slowest
3. What will you .... for lunch tomorrow?
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
4. We should .... our problems.
   a) save b) serve c) solve d) service

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. jump - can - A grasshopper - high - .

....

2. feathers - All - have - birds - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

Guiding words:

(eyes - hear - touch - smell - tongue)

....

....

....

....



Exam



1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have a nice variety of weather in ....
   a) China b) India c) Egypt d) France
2. We have very .... summers.
   a) hot b) cold c) warm d) cool
3. Our .... are cooler.
   a) summers b) winters c) falls d) springs
4. It doesn't often rain in ....
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Tanta d) Banha

2 | Listen and complete.

1. I .... get up very early.
2. I usually have a .... in the morning.
3. I never go to .... on foot.
4. I usually return home in the ....

3 | Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fins - lay - breathe - oxygen

Fish live in water and take in 1) .... through their gills; they can't 2) .... air. They are cold-blooded and they 3) .... eggs. They also have scales and they use 4) .... to move.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Dina. I live in Alexandria with my family. We live in an apartment in a neighborhood called Smoha. There are 5 people in my family; my parents , my brother, my sister and me. We have a lot of services in my city. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where I can buy anything I need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. Montaza Palace is my favorite place.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. The underlined word "parents" refers to ....
   a) father   b) mother   c) sister   d) a & b
2. Dina lives in a/an ....
   a) house   b) villa   c) shop   d) apartment

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Dina live? ....
4. What is Dina's favorite place? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Rasha is bad at math. ☐
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa. ☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rasha is great at ....
   a) English   b) Arabic   c) Math   d) science
2. Grandpa was one of the .... Makers.
   a) Car   b) Star   c) Tent   d) Shoe

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I wash my face .... I get up.
   a) before b) so that c) while d) after
2. There were three .... of farming in Egypt.
   a) seasons b) months c) weeks d) years
3. People will .... to Mars in the future.
   a) travel b) traveling c) traveled d) travels
4. Kareem .... to school every day.
   a) walking b) walks c) walked d) walk

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - than - A blue whale - a whale shark - bigger - .

....

2. get - I - exercising - after - tired - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being healthy"

Guiding words:

(healthy - food - exercise - sport - water - sleep - TV)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة





Exam 7

1 | Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Pupils paint and draw in .... lessons.
   a) art b) English c) science d) maths
2. English is the .... of England.
   a) subject b) lesson c) picture d) language
3. Maths lessons help us learn about ....
   a) pictures b) languages c) numbers d) letters
4. Pupils like their ....
   a) hospital b) class c) school d) park

2 | Listen and complete.

1. Tamer is .... years old.
2. Tamer lives with his ....
3. Tamer lives in ....
4. Tamer has .... brothers.

3 | Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

book - bus - did - went

Sara : Where did you go yesterday?
Heba : I .... (1) .... to the library.
Sara : How did you go there?
Heba : I went by .... (2) ....
Sara : Did you borrow a .... (3) ....?
Heba : Yes, I .... (4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports. My cousin, Nadia, lives in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. Fares lives in the .... Governorate.
   a) Red Sea b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Cairo
2. The underlined word "farthest" is opposite to ....
   a) nearest b) biggest c) smallest d) first

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Aswan? ....
4. When did the engineers finish the Aswan High Dam? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab's grandparents were sad to see her. ( )
2. Lobna invents things all the time. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....
   a) train b) ship c) car d) bus
2. Rasha is good at ....
   a) Arabic b) math c) tennis d) sewing

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When the bear eats a fish, the bear is a ....

   a) invertebrate b) predator c) prey d) kind

2. They play tennis .... school.

   a) so that b) although c) after d) while

3. The blue whale is the .... sea animal.

   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

4. Ahmed does his homework ....

   a) well b) good c) bad d) dangerous

7 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. to - day - Noha - school - every - walks - .

....

2. was - in - Music - Egypt - important - ancient - .

....

8 | Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Summer camp"

Guiding words:

(camp - friends - spend - mental activities - sports - competitions - fun)

....

....

....



Exam 

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. At school, I have .... every day.
   a) art   b) English   c) Arabic   d) science
2. I watch TV .... doing my homework.
   a) before   b) while   c) after   d) when
3. My .... helps me study English.
   a) brother   b) mother   c) sister   d) father
4. My favorite .... is English.
   a) subject   b) book   c) color   d) sport

2 Listen and complete.

1. .... books gives us information.
2. In the .... , you can learn about people and life.
3. I can .... books from my school library.
4. My school library is on the .... floor.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

club - practice - lounge - Why

Noha : What are we doing today, mom?

Mom : We have to tidy the .... (1) ....

Noha : But I want to go to the .... (2) ....

Mom : .... (3) .... ?

Noha : Because I want to .... (4) .... football.

Mom : OK, but first, let's tidy the lounge.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five different types of vertebrates. Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. .... are animals with a backbone.
   a) Invertebrates b) Vertebrates c) Snakes d) Humans
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) mammals b) birds c) fish d) reptiles

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many types of vertebrates are there? ....
4. Which mammals can fly? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The pattern has three layers of cotton. ( )
2. Grandpa's eyes are very good now. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Doha makes amazing ....
   a) art b) colors c) math d) show
2. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a) sad b) bad c) mad d) pleased



6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....

a) slow b) slowly c) slowest d) slower

2. They .... tired.

a) am b) is c) are d) be

3. I go to school .... I can learn.

a) to b) so that c) by d) with

4. The giraffe is .... than the horse.

a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. plays - Noura - on Mondays - volleyball - .

....

2. brain - move - Our - how - controls - we - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Music"

Guiding words:

(folk - traditional - Saidi - instruments - singing - drumming)

....

....

....

....

Exam 9

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We went to the park last ....
   a) Thursday b) Friday c) Monday d) Sunday
2. I went to the park with my ....
   a) mother b) uncle c) brother d) father
3. I had lunch at ....
   a) a restaurant b) a cinema c) a shop d) home
4. We went to the market to buy a ....
   a) t-shirt b) coat c) hat d) jacket

2 Listen and complete.

1. I go to school on ....
2. My school is ....
3. We have lessons in the ....
4. At the ...., I talk to my friends.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

many - capital - governorates - Cairo

Adam : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, it is. What's the ...(1)................. of Egypt?

Adam : It's ....(2)....................

Tourist : How ....(3).......... governorates are there in Egypt?

Adam : There are 27 ....(4)....................

Tourist : Thank you very much.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. "Complicated" means ....
   a) easy   b) hard   c) complex   d) soft
2. Carpets are made of Egyptian ....
   a) cotton   b) paper   c) thread   d) wool

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What colors are often used in Egyptian carpets? ....
4. Who can work quickly? ....

5 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. ( )
2. A few people want to learn. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa's eyes are not very .... now.
   a) happy   b) good   c) worse   d) bad
2. The pattern has three ....
   a) sides   b) angles   c) layers   d) corners

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef .... English.
   a) speak b) spoken c) speaking d) speaks
2. The .... pumps blood around the body.
   a) heart b) lungs c) nose d) bone
3. Lara did .... project on global warming.
   a) her b) he c) his d) she
4. The whale is the .... animal in the sea.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a small - on - I - the Nile - live in - village - .

....

2. people - How - in - many - live - Cairo - ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Your governorate"

Guiding words:

(Alexandria - north - sea - large - beaches)

....

....

....




Exam 10

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our teacher gave us some .... yesterday.
   a) information b) advice c) surprises d) gifts
2. He advised us to eat .... food.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) dangerous d) spicy
3. Healthy food is good for our ....
   a) system b) breath c) head d) brain
4. He told us to get enough ....
   a) sleep b) holiday c) food d) swing

2 Listen and complete.

1. Youssef and his family went on a ....
2. They went to a beautiful island in ....
3. They went by ....
4. They .... their holiday.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

go - bus - did - saw

Ahmed : Where .... (1) .... you go last summer?
Amr : I went to Alexandria.
Ahmed : How did you .... (2) .... there?
Amr : I went by .... (3) ....
Ahmed : What did you see there?
Amr : I .... (4) .... Qaitbay Fort.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Hanin. I'm in primary four. I'm ten years old. I like maths and English. I live in Behiera Governorate. It is densely populated. There are more than 10 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are lots of cars, so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be careful.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be ....
   a) kind b) careful c) careless d) bad
2. Behiera Governorate is .... populated.
   a) densely b) sparsely c) slowly d) quickly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Hanin live? ....
4. What subjects does Hanin like? ....

5 The Reader

A | Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the best actors in Khayameya. ( )
2. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers. ( )

B | Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab could .... and help her grandpa.
   a) write b) play c) do d) sew
2. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....
   a) ship b) car c) bus d) train

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Braille has different .... of dots.
   a) pronunciation b) combinations c) pollution d) collection
2. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a) hills b) gills c) fins d) bills
3. She ran quickly .... she could catch the bus.
   a) although b) while c) after d) so that
4. People .... to Mars for vacation in 2052.
   a) traveled b) will travel c) travel d) travels

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a rural - lives - Zein - in - environment - .

....

2. taste - with - We - tongue - our - .

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Aswan"

Guiding words:

(Aswan - Nile - south - High Dam)

....

....

....



Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

2) Listen and complete.

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

- Listen and complete.

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimetres long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua new Guinea. It's 7mm long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects they carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

2) Listen and complete.

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

- Listen and complete.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. I am always polite and helpful at school.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Music was important in Ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and Ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

2) Listen and complete.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

- Listen and complete.

I'm Taha. I live in Alexandria Governorate. It is in the north of Egypt. It is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Dina lives in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Dina. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family. We are a big family. There are seven people in my family. We live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city. We have a lot of services. My favorite place is Montaza Palace. I visit it with my family once a month.

2) Listen and complete.

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

- Listen and complete.

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use

stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resources. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones and they are all natural resources.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She has always been a calm person.

2) Listen and complete.

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Crude oil is turned into petroleum. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs. There are serious problems with fossil fuels: global warming and climate change.

- Listen and complete.

Team work is very important for the success of a project. In a team, you need members who are responsible so they take the work seriously. You need to collaborate while working with other members to get the best results. They need to have a positive attitude if there are difficult times while working. They need to communicate well with other team members.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hend looked out of the window of her family's house. She looked at the ships going along the Suez Canal. The ships were so big. She wants to be a ship's captain. She thinks it's a relaxing job. Hend loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

2) Listen and complete.

Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples in the Valley of the Kings? I always wanted to go there because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

- Listen and complete.

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are

too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains.

Exam (1) إدارة كوم حماده

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain.

2) Listen and complete.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, your family, or your neighbourhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends and my school.

Exam (2) إدارة الإسكندرية

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink. We put food in our mouths. We chew it with our teeth. The food goes down the osophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food mixes with a special liquid. The liquid changes the food into energy.

2) Listen and complete.

Mona is in grade 4. Her mother is a teacher. Her father is a doctor. Mona helps her mother in the kitchen. She likes reading and drawing. Every Friday, she goes to the club. Mona is a good girl.

Exam (3) إدارة دمياط

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The human body is made up of a number of different systems. The respiratory system helps us to breathe. Each system is made up of organs. The stomach is part of the digestive system.

2) Listen and complete.

Yesterday I visited the zoo. I saw the giraffe. The giraffe is the tallest of all animals. The giraffe's eyes are big and soft. The zoo is the home of the giraffe. The giraffe lives a simple life there.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it is very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather and warm in cold weather. Our skin has got lots of layers. The top layer is strong. Water can't get through it. The middle layer helps us to feel hot and cold things. It has got blood vessels. The bottom layer attaches your skin to your bones and muscles.

2) Listen and complete.

Hello! My name is Heidi. I am in grade four. Today we are at the track. There is a big sport event. Lots of athletes from different schools are competing. They are wearing red, blue, green and black. There are competitions in running, and throwing. I am watching the long jump. I think the athletes wearing red will win.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are a lot of sports in Egypt. I am good at playing football. I love watching football matches on TV. I am not good at playing squash.

2) Listen and complete.

Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a blue tie. In summer, we can wear blue shorts.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. Our winters are cooler. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.

2) Listen and complete.

I always get up very early. I usually have a shower in the morning. I never go to school on foot. I usually return home in the afternoon.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Pupils paint and draw pictures in art lessons. They learn English which is the language of England. They learn about numbers in maths lessons. Pupils like their school.

2) Listen and complete.

Tamer is ten. He lives with his family in Luxor. He's tall, so he plays basketball in the playground. He has two brothers.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

English is my favourite subject. We have it every day at school. My mother helps me study it at home. After doing my homework, I watch TV.

2) Listen and complete.

Reading books in the library gives us information about people and life. I can borrow books from my school library which is on the ground floor.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last Friday, I went with my brother Ali to the park. We played together. Then we had lunch at a restaurant. We went to the market to buy a jacket.

2) Listen and complete.

I go to school on foot because it's near. My school is big. We have our lessons in the classroom. At the break, I talk to my friends in the playground.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our teacher gave us some advice yesterday. He advised us to eat healthy food as it's good for our brain. He told us to get enough sleep to think clearly.

2) Listen and complete.

Youssef and his family went on a trip to a beautiful island in Aswan. They went by car. They enjoyed their holiday there. There was a beautiful hotel on the island.

AL-BAHER

1

Model Answers





Model Answers

Book Answers

Lets Remember

Lesson (1)

1) Read and match.

1) c 2) d 3) b 4) a

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sugar 2) to 3) siblings
4) copy editor 5) nutrients 6) metal
7) three-dimensional

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How can you run fast?
2) What taste does it like?

Lesson (2)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) interview 2) course 3) article 4) many

2) Listen and choose.

1) mustn't 2) never 3) If 4) aren't
5) has to 6) was used 7) won't 8) written

3) Read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1) ✓ 2) ✓ 3) × 4) ×
5) ✓ 6) ×

4) Circle the words with a different sound.

1) audio 2) swamp 3) dangerous
4) fiction 5) tent 6) acacia

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) digestive 2) swallow 3) stomach 4) energy

2) Listen and complete.

1) bones 2) strong 3) Muscles 4) turn

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) digestive 2) chew 3) swallow
4) stomach 5) energy

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) air 2) heart
3) We use our nose.
4) It goes to our lungs.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) breathe 2) digestive 3) to 4) into
5) nose 6) pumps 7) up of 8) Muscles

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We chew and swallow food.
2) Our heart pumps blood around our body.
3) Bones protect our organs and make us strong.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our body"

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) senses 2) eyes 3) smell 4) skin

2) Listen and complete.

1) blind 2) dots
3) touch 4) Louis Braille

3) Read and match.

1) c 2) a 3) d 4) b

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) senses 2) Deaf
3) We have 5 senses. 4) They use sign language.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) eyes 2) hear 3) nose 4) tongue
5) skin 6) see 7) sign

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We use our eyes to see.
2) What can you hear?
3) We can feel with our skin.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We have five senses. We use our senses to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose,

taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

Mr Gamal prefers Arabic music to African music.

Louis Braille invented the Braille code.

Mrs Azza reads Braille because she can't see well.

Lesson 3)

) Listen and complete.

1) hemispheres 2) left

right 4) art

) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

tidy 2) do 3) go 4) What

) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) are 2) does 3) watch 4) go

] are 6) play 7) What 8) paint

is 10) is 11) goes 12) have

) Correct the verbs.

1) is 2) play 3) has 4) looks

Lesson (4)

) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

swimming 2) three 3) first 4) won

) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

What 2) competition 3) disabilities 4) take

) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

champion 2) won 3) do

gold 5) volleyball

) Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ahmed 2) bronze

He plays sitting volleyball. 4) In 2016.

Lessons (5&6)

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Healthy diet"

Healthy food is very important to our bodies. We should eat vegetables and fruits. We shouldn't eat too many cakes and biscuits. You should drink milk, too. To keep fit you should eat healthy food.

Activities on Unit (1)

) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) respiratory 2) air 3) oxygen 4) heart

) Listen and complete.

1) competition 2) four 3) different 4) athletes

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) eyes 2) tongue 3) working

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Paralympic Games 2) happens

3) 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races.

4) No, it isn't

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) tent makers 2) sew

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) pumps 2) go 3) need 4) nose

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The Paralympic Games is an international competition.

2) Who uses sign language?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Digestive system"

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) cold-blooded 2) sun

3) four 4) scales

2) Listen and complete.

1) warm 2) feathers 3) eggs 4) fly

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) five 2) backbone 3) warm 4) Bats

5) Reptiles 6) four 7) moist 8) smooth

9) gills 10) beaks

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) mammals 2) don't lay

3) On land. 4) Bats

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Amphibians lay eggs in water.

2) There are five types of vertebrates.



3) Mammals are warm-blooded.

4) Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater, and wetlands.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) smaller 2) bigger 3) stronger 4) bigger
5) than 6) faster 7) biggest
8) The smallest 9) slower 10) longer

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The ostrich is the biggest bird in the world.
2) Ants are stronger than humans.
3) The blue whale is the biggest animal.
4) The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

3) Write correct sentences.

1) Leopards are larger than cheetahs .
2) A bee hummingbird is the smallest bird in the word.
3) Ants are stronger than humans.

4) Read and match.

1) c 2) a 3) d 4) b

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) backbones 2) cold-blooded
3) sea 4) soft 5) swim 6) arachnids

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) protection 2) Invertebrates 3) backbone
4) Spiders 5) fast 6) slowly 7) quickly
8) sadly 9) well 10) soft

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) invertebrates 2) 90%
3) On land and in water. 4) Dragonflies

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Invertebrates"

Invertebrates don't have backbones . They are cold-blooded. They live in the sea and some live on land. Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells. Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk. Arachnids are not insects. They have eight legs.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and complete.

1) Primary 2) secondary
3) orange 4) darker

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) yellow 2) Red 3) Green
4) white 5) darker

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The coral reef is very bright.
2) Some animals are poisonous.
3) Red and yellow make orange.
4) Predators catch and eat preys.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) under the sea 2) predators
3) Some fish and some plants. 4) Yes, they are.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) land 2) Zookeepers 3) Bats
4) endangered 5) soil 6) pond

2) Read and complete.

1) flat 2) flowers 3) roots

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) hide 2) bright
3) Predators 4) poisonous

2) Listen and complete.

1) cold 2) sun 3) four 4) lay

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) animals 2) types
3) invertebrates 4) backbone

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) gills 2) primary 3) bigger
4) biggest 5) quickly

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) birds 2) hard
3) No, most birds can fly, but some can't.
4) Because they eat different food.

6) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) artisan 2) flowers

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

2) Most reptiles have four legs.

3) The octopus can swim very well.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Insects"

Insects are invertebrates. They have six legs. The grasshoppers are very amazing insects. Some insects can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs and is called arachnid.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) community 2) town

3) neighborhood 4) citizenship

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) citizenship 2) ideas 3) polite 4) mine

5) hers 6) ours 7) his 8) theirs

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) community 2) school

3) A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.

4) In our city or village.

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My community"

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. It's a mixture of people, places and ideas. It includes the activities you can do. For me, I live in a city. I do many things that are good for my community. I'm always polite and helpful at my school and my sports club.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) write 2) scribes 3) special 4) symbols

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) history 2) ancient 3) three 4) Upper

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) long 2) Lower 3) south 4) 3

5) unite 6) scribes 7) hieroglyphs

8) started

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) history 2) Africa

3) About 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. 4) Mena

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Where was Lower Egypt?

2) Upper Egypt was in the south.

3) The ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs.

4) Children learned to become a scribe at school.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"The history of Egypt"

Egypt has a long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile 9,000 years ago. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. Mena joined these two parts to unite Egypt. There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt: the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom and the New Kingdom

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Alexandria 2) important 3) port 4) capital

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) 440,098km² 2) population

3) 245,000 4) capital 5) oasis

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) cities and countryside 2) Aswan

3) 27 4) lower 5) beach 6) Dam

7) city 8) diving 9) port 10) south

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) There are 27 governorates in Egypt.

2) New Valley is the biggest governorate.

3) How many people live in Cairo Governorate?

4) Damietta Governorate is 1200 square kilometers.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Aswan 2) Engineers 3) In Aswan.

4) It has a beach which is over 1,000 km.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Alexandria"

I live in Alexandria. It is in the north of Egypt. It has a big sea and beautiful beaches. It's important



because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Lesson (4)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Important 2) know 3) pictures
4) Instruments 5) put

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) oboe 2) shabbaba 3) string
4) Saidi 5) over

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
2) What kind of music do you like?

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) music 2) south 3) Saidi music.
4) In the deserts of Egypt.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Music in Egypt"

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. Musicians in farther south of Egypt play Nubian music. Masicians in the deserts play Bedouin music. The rebaba is a Bedouin instrument. Clapping and drumming is part of music.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and match.

1) d 2) b 3) e 4) a 5) c

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Folk 2) colorful 3) rhythm
4) Attractions 5) Culture

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) history 2) beautifully 3) Tent makers.
4) You can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Carpet making"

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful. Each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for the complicated patterns in red and blue.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) wrote down 2) hieroglyphs 3) symbols 4) tombs

2) Listen and complete.

1) community 2) family 3) special 4) good

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) 27
3) New Valley 2) countryside
4) people

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Citizenship 2) his 3) ours 4) wrote

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) carpet 2) quickly
3) It takes many years.
4) They're famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

6) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) picture 2) help

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Nubian dancing is lovely.
2) I live in the Alexandria Governorate.
3) A community is a place where you live.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Aswan"

I live in Aswan. It is the farthest governorate in the south of Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. It's famous for its history and magic location. Visitors like to see the High Dam and Lake Nasser. They can enjoy seeing many monuments. They go on a boat on the Nile. It's a beautiful governorate.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) drink 2) changes
3) respiratory 4) nose

2) Listen and complete.

1) water 2) bottom 3) long 4) spread

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) meet 2) live
3) Governorate 4) capital

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) slowly 2) bigger 3) brain 4) theirs

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) plants 2) large
3) The large flat leaf. 4) The roots.

6) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) birds 2) pilot

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The elephant is smaller than the blue whale.
2) Egypt has lots of traditional music.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My Governorate"

I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It's in the east of Egypt. It's a beautiful governorate. There is a lot to see and do there. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) village 2) sparsely
3) traditional 4) isolated

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Greater Cairo 2) densely
3) million 4) shops

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) urban 2) dense 3) aren't
4) pedestrian 5) metropolitan 6) congestion

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Greater Cairo 2) Pedestrians
3) She lives in Greater Cairo.
4) There are more than 20 million inhabitants.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Where do you live?
2) More people live in rural areas.
3) My village is sparsely populated.

6) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) sparsely 2) people 3) isolated 4) services

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Where I live"

I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants. It's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars, so there is also congestion. There are a lot of services here; shops, markets and schools.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) goose 2) women 3) animals
4) a cat 5) babies

2) Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1) donkeys 2) women 3) potatoes
4) buffaloes 5) men 6) cities
7) teeth 8) dates 9) people
10) sisters 11) babies 12) children
13) mountains 14) deer 15) geese
16) brothers 17) tomatoes 18) sheep
19) buses 20) fish 21) families

Activities

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) village 2) farmer 3) six 4) cats

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) village 2) job 3) farmer 4) tomatoes

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sheep 2) brother 3) people 4) children
5) is 6) babies 7) sisters 8) boys
9) geese 10) Buffaloes

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) There are six sheep and two buffaloes.
2) Do you have any brothers or sisters?
3) My family lives in a traditional home.

Lesson (3)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) so that 2) After 3) before
4) although 5) after

2) Read and complete with:

1) although 2) while 3) so that
4) before 5) Every time

Activities

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)traditional 2)artisans 4)rural 3)beautiful

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)so that 2)although 3)As soon as
4)while 5)although 6)after

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1)What do artisans use to make a carpet?
2)They collect the wool from sheep.
3)My father took me to the workshop.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1)yarn 2)dry 3)Yesterday 4)The guide

Lesson (4)

1) Answer the multiplication problems.

1)21 × 24 = 504 2)36 × 8 = 288

2) Answer the division problems.

1)240 ÷ 6 = 40 2)693 ÷ 3 = 231

3) Answer this problem with fractions.

1)$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$, $1 - \frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$ 2)$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1)Where 2)are 3)Yes

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1)We should protect the environment.
2)There is good public transportation.
3)People can walk to work.
4)We need green spaces.

3) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Alexandria"

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)village 2)Nile 3)farmer 4)football

2) Listen and complete.

1)services 2)bus 3)Palace 4)family

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1)traditional 2)spinning 3)so that 4)craft

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)artisans 2)so that
3)warp 4)Every time

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1)cars 2)Fareeda
3)She lives in Greater Cairo.
4)There are more than 20 million in habitants.

6) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1)F 2)T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)invents 2)art

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1)Do you have any sisters?
2)Artisans can weave carpets.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My city"

I'm Zein. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. It is the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has a port. There is a lot of industry there. I like to go to the beach and the gardens. I like my city.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)water 2)ground 3)soil 4)natural

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1)made 2)wood 3)renewable 4)nature

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)Natural 2)stone 3)petroleum
4)renewable 5)wood

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1)natural resources 2)stone
3)Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.
4)Plastic is made from petroleum.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1)Fossil fuels 2)coal
3)ground 4)electricity

2) Listen and complete.

1) fossil fuels 2) green house
3) environment 4) global

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) non-renewable 2) fossil
3) natural gas

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) oil 2) gas 3) fuels 4) fuel
5) wells 6) raises 7) cries 8) fixes
9) watches 10) visits

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Gameela wakes up at 7 o'clock.
2) She does her homework after lunch.

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Gameela 2) movie
3) Gameela wakes up at 7 o'clock.
4) She catches the bus to go home.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fossil fuels"

Fossil fuels are a non-renewable resource of energy. Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. Fossil fuels cause global warming and climate change. Fossil fuels will run out one day.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and complete.

1) energy 2) sunlight
3) electrical energy 4) television

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) expensive 2) power 3) space
4) panels 5) cheap

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) out 2) panels 3) expensive
5) can't 5) after

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Solar panels collect energy from the sun.
2) Solar energy is turned into electrical energy.
3) We need to make electricity.
4) Fossil fuels will run out.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Solar Power"

Solar energy is a renewable resource of energy. We use solar panels to collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes. Solar panels are expensive, but electricity from solar power is cheap.

Lesson (4)

1) Read and match.

1) d 2) a 3) b 4) c

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) her 2) his 3) their 4) their
5) her 6) He 7) They
8) his 9) her

3) Read and circle.

her / their / his / her / his

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) project 2) solver 3) open 4) get
5) polite 6) Dear 7) for
8) Communicate 9) End
10) advertisement

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Are you interested in clean energy?
2) Be a problem solver. 3) You should be polite.
4) If you are positive, you will help yourself.

3) Write an email.

To : zahramansour@mansourdesign.eg
Subject : Job application
Dear Ms. Zahra,

I'm writing because I saw your advertisement on a website. I'd be very interested in working for you as a designer of cell phone chargers. I studied engineering at Cairo University. I worked as an engineer for an electronic company for a year. I'm very interested in solar energy. I could travel for an interview at any time. I look forward to hearing form you soon.

Yours sincerely,
Ziad Mohamed

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) skill 2) share 3) complete 4) upset

2) Listen and complete.

1) engineering 2) team 3) polite 4) hard

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) change 2) transfer
3) sunlight 4) mechanical

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) expensive 2) responsible 3) her
4) non-renewable 5) watches

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) natural resources 2) replaced
3) The sun, wind and falling water.
4) From nature.

6) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) teacher 2) join

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Fossil fuels is a natural resource.
2) Sama did her science project.
3) Teamwork is very important for success.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being a good team member"

Teamwork is very important for the success of any project. You should communicate with the other members. You should listen to others' ideas. Stay calm and don't get upset. Be a problem solver. Be on time for work and work hard. Be reliable, and responsible.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) train 2) Aswan 3) saw 4) enjoy

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) train 2) boats 3) ferry 4) airplanes

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) pipes 2) rail 3) air 4) water
5) road 6) Have 7) ever 8) by

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Have you ever taken a river ferry?
2) The Suez Canal is 193 kilometres long.
3) I've never traveled by ship.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Different kinds of transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. In rivers, you can see boats and ferries. If you want to travel faster, you can travel on an airplane. Trains are also good means of transport. They're comfortable. You can travel by road on a bus.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) take 2) won't 3) will you
4) tomorrow 5) won't

2) Read and match.

1) d 2) a 3) b 4) c

3) Can you write the contractions? Follow the example.

2) we won't 3) He'll 4) They'll
5) She'll 6) You won't

Activities

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) will 2) What 3) take 4) fly

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) fly 2) will use 3) won't 4) tomorrow

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Will they take a train to Aswan?
2) She will travel on a ship.
3) Will people use flying cars in the future?

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) tech 2) spacecrafts 3) jobs 4) work

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) advertisement 2) VR 3) robots
4) User 5) specific 6) best 7) search
8) safe 9) design 10) space

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A search engine is a website.
2) People will build cities under water.
3) People design spacecraft to travel into space.

Lesson (4)

1) Read and match.

1) b 2) c 3) a

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) personal 2) obvious 3) ten

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Use capital letters for a passphrase.

2) Add spaces to make it stronger.

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Passwords and passphrases"

To create a strong password or a passphrase, don't use personal information. Don't use easy or obvious words. Don't use less than ten characters. Choose different words and add spaces to make it stronger. Use some capital letters. By these things your password will be safe.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Fill in the spaces with.

1) Canal 2) waved

3) containers 4) make

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) four 2) waves

3) In Suez. 4) To many countries

3) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Transporting goods"

There are many ways of transporting goods and products. We can transport them by water on ships. We can transport them by air. Airplanes are fast. We can use rail, road and pipe lines for transportation.

Activities on Unit (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Virtual Reality 2) eyes

3) Museums 4) Universities

2) Listen and complete.

1) Egyptians 2) travel

3) river 4) goods

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) fine 2) bus 3) Where 4) went

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) modern 2) ships

3) People used to transport their goods on camels or on ships.

4) The plane

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) traveling 2) wonderful

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) will take 2) train 3) will fly 4) engine

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) When do you use passwords?

2) I won't sit by the window.

3) Have you ever traveled on a ship?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Creating passwords"

To be safe on the internet, you should create a strong password. Don't use personal information. Don't tell your friends about your password. Don't use easy or obvious words. Don't use less than ten characters.

The Story

Activities

1) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) T

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) bored 2) tent 3) train 4) pleased

5) good 6) artisans 7) lotus flowers

8) sew

Activities

1) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) T 5) T

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) clever 2) math 3) invents

4) art 5) layers 6) teacher

7) Khayameya 8) summer

Final Revision Answers

Unit (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) eat 2) stomach 3) changes 4) bodies

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Games 2) four 3) Parasports
4) athletes

2) Listen and complete.

1) deaf 2) country 3) faces 4) sight

- Listen and complete.

1) video 2) health 3) snacks 4) habits

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) senses 2) five 3) hear 4) eyes

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) deaf 2) sign 3) hands 4) different

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) deaf 2) Muscles 3) heart 4) skeleton
5) blind 6) gold 7) digestive
8) respiratory 9) sign 10) place
11) Bones 12) part 13) tongue

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) is 2) weighs 3) has 4) looks
5) every 6) does 7) has 8) plays
9) go 10) He 11) do
12) have 13) listens

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) 75% 2) fiber
3) It includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water.
4) We need them for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Mom wants to tidy the lounge.
2) We play tennis after school.
3) They are tired and bored.
4) What are we doing today, Mom?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We use our senses every day to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see. We use our nose to smell. We use our ears to hear and our tongue to taste. We can feel with our skin.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our respiratory system"

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Scientists 2) smallest
3) chameleon 4) frog

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) plants 2) attract 3) Insects 4) flowers

2) Listen and complete.

1) blooded 2) babies 3) lay 4) fly

- Listen and complete.

1) warm 2) feathers 3) eggs 4) fly

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) zoo 2) animals
3) elephants 4) mammals

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) backbone 2) cold-blooded 3) sea
4) soft 5) Arachnids

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) lions 2) seeds 3) beaks 4) scales
5) gills 6) moist 7) cold 8) water
9) fins 10) warm 11) African
12) mammal 13) vertebrates 14) bee

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) smaller 2) biggest 3) bigger 4) smallest
5) biggest 6) taller 7) smallest 8) quickly
9) well 10) the biggest 11) slowly
12) quickly 13) stronger 14) easily

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) 400,000 2) pollen
3) Primary colors and secondary colors.
4) By mixing red and yellow.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Leopards are larger than cheetahs.
2) Ostriches are faster than horses.
3) Sloths are slower than giant tortoises.
4) Green anacondas are the heaviest snakes.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Keeping animals at the zoo"

Keeping animals at the zoo has some advantages and disadvantages. It is a wrong habitat for the animals because they don't feel free. It protects the animals from dangers. Children can visit the zoo and watch the animals, have fun and learn about them. The vet and zookeepers can look after animals.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) community 2) friends
3) citizenship 4) polite

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Scribes 2) pyramids
3) Ancient 4) Musicians

2) Listen and complete.

1) history 2) 9,000
3) Lower 4) south

- Listen and complete.

1) Alexandria 2) Egypt
3) port 4) capital

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Saidi 2) instruments 3) string 4) drumming

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Governorate 2) 440,098 km^2
3) capital 4) oasis

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) governorates 2) biggest 3) south
4) united 5) Citizenship 6) Scribes 7) folk
8) 27 9) community 10) papyrus
11) High Dam 12) three 13) oboes
14) hieroglyphs

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) hers 2) theirs 3) your 4) his
5) my 6) his 7) yours 8) were
9) did 10) started 11) wrote
12) studied 13) mine 14) was

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) crafts 2) colors 3) Tent makers
4) In many traditional stores and markets.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How many people live in Cairo?
2) New Valley is the biggest Governorate.
3) My favorite instrument is the oud.
4) Bedouin music includes singing and drumming.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My governorate"

I live in Giza Governorat. It's very big. It's west of Cairo. It's famous for the pyramids. It has many intersting places. I go to the zoo on Fridays to see the animals. I can also enjoy the River Nile.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Ancient Egypt"

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Alexandria 2) city 3) second 4) port

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) family 2) 11 3) services 4) month

2) Listen and complete.

1) Cairo 2) densely
3) 20 4) congestion

- Listen and complete.

1) warp 2) cotton
3) artisans 4) patterns

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) workshop 2) artisans 3) enjoy 4) much

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) workshop 2) guide 3) Artisans 4) dye

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) village 2) sheep 3) River
4) inhabitants 5) Artisans 6) guide

7) carpets 8) metropolitan 9) densely
10) isolated 11) carpets 12) buffaloes
13) Pedestrians

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) although 2) while 3) even though
4) so that 5) Every time 6) after
7) as soon as 8) while 9) Every time
10) so that 11) before 12) before

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) yarn 2) carpet
3) Last week. 4) The guide.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Artisans make beautiful carpets.
2) We chop vegetables before we cook them.
3) Habiba couldn't sleep although she was tired.
4) We have a lot of animals on our farm.
5) The wool is collected from the sheep.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Carpet making"

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet, first they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My city"

I live in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's a beautiful city. There are a lot of services. There are schools, shops and malls. It's sparsely populated. It has 17 neighborhoods. There are beautiful beaches. I often go there on Fridays and swim in the sea. Tourists like to visit my city.

Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) nature 2) stone 3) forests 4) Gold

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) engineering 2) wind 3) calm 4) Kenya

2) Listen and complete.

1) resources 2) Crude
3) dinosaurs 4) problems

- Listen and complete.

1) project 2) collaborate
3) positive 4) members

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) nature 2) fuels
3) non-renewable 4) gas

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) career 2) project
3) promotion 4) train

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) Wind 2) warning 3) sun
4) renewable 5) rainy 6) forests 7) soil
8) expensive 9) solutions 10) Training 11) calm
12) Skill 13) collaborate 14) Promotion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) wakes 2) her 3) fixes 4) his
5) finishes 6) my 7) watches 8) their
9) drinks 10) his 11) goes 12) their
13) washes 14) their

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) naturally 2) Metal
3) Renewable and non-renewable.
4) The problem is once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We can't destroy energy.
2) Solar panels collect sunlight.
3) Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.

8) Write the email.

To : Mahmoudgamal@gmail.com
From : Ahmed20@gmail.com
Subject : job application
Dear Mr Mahmoud,
I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies Website. I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar Park for one year. I could travel to Cairo for an interview or meet online at any time from Saturday to Friday. I look forward to hearing from you soon.
Yours sincerely,
Ahmed

Unit (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) window 2) family's 3) big 4) friends

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) transport 2) slowly 3) Ships 4) faster

2) Listen and complete.

1) Kings 2) archeology 3) lunch 4) interesting

- Listen and complete.

1) Robotics 2) robots
3) automobiles 4) dangerous

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) bus 2) drives 3) will 4) plane

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Designer 2) Experience 3) technology 4) safe

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) pipes 2) rail 3) water 4) road
5) machines 6) trains 7) search engine
8) browser 9) research 10) characters
11) safe 12) Canal

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) go 2) won't 3) will be 4) use
5) I will 6) will have 7) won't 8) have
9) won't 10) will be 11) Will 12) fly

6) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) slowly 2) airplanes 3) By air. 4) Pipelines.

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I've never traveled by plane.
2) Don't tell your friends your passwords.
3) Robots will fly airplanes in the future.
4) Will people live on the moon?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being safe online"

The internet in very important, We all use it for many purposes, So, it in important to be safe online. You should create a strong password. Don't tell your friends your password. Don't share your personal information. You should use the safe seaech option in your browser.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Travelling by air is the most comfortable. Ships travel on water. We can travel from the suburbs to the city by road. Going by rail is more comfortable than driving. We can transport goods and products long distances by water. Ships can carry large items.

Exam (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) good 2) muscles 3) calories 4) Mental

2) Listen and complete.

1) community 2) house 3) mixture 4) friends

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) took 2) team 3) in

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) dolls 2) happy 3) Tomorrow
4) She fixed the doll.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) summer 2) artisans

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) goes 2) play 3) joined 4) became

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
2) We breathe in air through our nose.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"A visit to the zoo"

I went to the zoo last week. I went with my family. We went by car. We saw many animals and birds. The lion is very strong. The elephant is the biggest animal. We played football. In the afternoon. We had our lunch. We came back home in the evening. We enjoyed ourselves very much.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) digestive 2) teeth 3) stomach 4) energy

2) Listen and complete.

1) 4 2) doctor 3) reading 4) Friday

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) villages 2) fruits 3) green

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) zoo 2) safe
3) They can see animals from different countries.

4) Because they are used to wide, open places.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) camouflage 2) largest

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) goes 2) bigger 3) ours 4) united

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Why don't you write about insects?

2) Fish take in oxygen through gills.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Having a pet"

It's fun to have pets. It's good to learn about how to look after them. You can learn about their species. Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise. They need a lot of care and attention. It can be expensive to have a pet. Animals can be noisy. Some animals can cause a mess. Some animals bite.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) different 2) breathe 3) organs 4) digestive

2) Listen and complete.

1) tallest 2) big 3) zoo 4) life

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) shares 2) problem 3) positive

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) computers 2) hurt

3) Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports.

4) Young children play games for long hours and it isn't good for their health.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) cooler 2) stitches

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) slowly 2) started 3) so that 4) their

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Plants use water to grow.

2) Have you ever traveled on a train?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"A place you would like to visit"

I would like to visit Aswan. It's in the south of Egypt. The Nile goes along Aswan. People there are kind and friendly. The weather there is very nice in winter. I'd like to visit the High Dam when I go there.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) skin 2) top

3) a,b and c 4) bottom

2) Listen and complete.

1) four 2) track

3) athletes 4) competitions

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) bus 2) drives 3) will 4) plane

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) rainy 2) restaurant

3) He works in a school. 4) Because it rained.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) invertebrates 2) third

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) eat 2) biggest 3) has 4) although

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Why don't you write about invertebrates?

2) Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Human body"

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Egypt 2) football 3) TV 4) squash

2) Listen and complete

1) smart 2) shirt 3) blue 4) shorts

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) Governorate 2) west
3) visit 4) Pyramids

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) water lily 2) large
3) Most plants grow in soil.
4) Their roots spread under the water.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) bored 2) clever

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) before 2) slower 3) have 4) solve

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A grasshopper can jump high.
2) All birds have feathers.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We have five senses. We use our senses to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) Egypt 2) hot 3) winters 4) Cairo

2) Listen and complete

1) always 2) shower 3) school 4) afternoon

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) oxygen 2) breathe 3) lay 4) fins

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) a & b 2) apartment
3) She lives in Alexandria.
4) Montaza Palace is her favorite place.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Math 2) Tent

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) after 2) seasons 3) travel 4) walks

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A blue whale is bigger than a whale shark.
2) I get tired after exercising.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being healthy"

To be healthy, we should have healthy food. We should eat a lot of fruits and vegetables. We should play sports and do exercise. We have to drink plenty of water. We shouldn't watch too much TV. We should have enough sleep.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) art 2) language 3) numbers 4) school

2) Listen and complete.

1) ten 2) family 3) two 4) Luxor

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) went 2) bus 3) book 4) did

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Red Sea 2) nearest
3) It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt.
4) In 1970.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) train 2) math

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) predator 2) after 3) biggest 4) well

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Noha walks to school every day.
2) Music was important in ancient Egypt.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Summer camp"

I go camping in the summer with my friends. We spend a week there. We do many mental activities there. We play sports together. We have a lot of competitions. We have fun.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) English 2) after 3) mother 4) subject

2) Listen and complete.

1) Reading 2) library
3) borrow 4) ground

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) lounge 2) club 3) Why 4) practice

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Vertebrates 2) mammals

3) There are five different types of vertebrates.

4) Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) art 2) pleased

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) slowly 2) are 3) so that 4) taller

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

2) Our brain controls how we move.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Music"

Music was important in ancient Egypt. There are many kinds of music now in Egypt. There is folk music and traditional music. In Upper Egypt, there is Saidi music. There are many musical instruments in Egypt. Singing and drumming is a key.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Friday 2) brother

3) a restaurant 4) jacket

2) Listen and complete.

1) foot 2) big 3) classroom 4) break

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) capital 2) Cairo

3) many 4) governorates

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) complex 2) wool

3) Red and blue.

4) A skilled person can work quickly.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) good 2) layers

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) speaks 2) heart 3) her 4) biggest

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I live in a small village on the Nile.

2) How many people live in Cairo?

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My governorate"

I live in Alexandria. It is in the north of Egypt. It has a big sea and beautiful beaches. The beaches are always busy. There is a lot of interesting places to go to My favourite place is Montaze Place. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) advice 2) healthy 3) brain 4) sleep

2) Listen and complete.

1) trip 2) Aswan 3) car 4) enjoyed

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) did 2) go 3) bus 4) saw

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) careful 2) densely

3) She lives in Behiera Governorate.

4) She likes maths and English.

5) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sew 2) train

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) combinations 2) gills

3) so that 4) will travel

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Zein lives in a rural environment.

2) We taste with our tongue.

8) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Aswan"

I live in Aswan. It's in the south of Egypt. The Nile goes along Aswan. Engineers finished building the High Dam in Aswan in 1970. It is a very beautiful governorate.